HISTORY AND POLITICAL EDUCATION

SENIOR TWO

TOPIC 04 CULTURE AND ETHNIC GROUPS IN EAST AFRICA

Learning outcomes

► know the meaning of culture and ethnic groups
► know the key cultural institutions and their leaders
► Know the cultural centers in east Africa.
► Know the impact of the ethnic groups in east Africa
► Know the contribution of the cultural handcrafts
► Need to respect the cultures of other ethnic groups to avoid conflict
► Analyze the contribution of the emerging cultural/moral youth camps
► Appreciate the value of cultural transitional justice mechanisms in conflict resolution in East Africa
► Understand the role of culture and gender in family matters.

Meaning of culture and ethnic groups

Definition of culture

► Culture means the customs, ideas, and social behavior of a particular group of people. In Uganda there is cultural diversity (many cultures?)
► Culture is also a way of life.

Definition of ethnic groups

► Ethnic group is a group of people that share a common cultural background i.e beliefs, values, behaviors, language, religion, ancestry etc.

This is usually handed down from one generation to another.

The Family

The family is a group of closely related people living together. Their relationship is either by blood, birth or adoption. A family is made up of the father, mother and their biological children or adopted children.

A family can also be seen as members linked together by marriage, blood, relationship or adoption.

The family can also be defined as the smallest unit of the society and the foundation and pillar of the society.

A family is the beginning of human society, from the family, a clan is formed, then a tribe and finally the nation.

The major types of a families are;

- The nuclear family. This is a family which is made up of father, mother and their biological children only.
- Extended family. This is a family which is made up of the father, mother, grand parents, children together with their distant as well as near relatives living together in a homestead.
- Forster family. This is a family where a husband and wife live together with adopted children. It may happen when a couple has failed to produce their own biological children.
- Institutional (care taker) families. These are families were children from different backgrounds come to leave together for example Sanyu babies' home, Nalukolongo home for the elderly.
- Patrilineal family. This is where the father's line determines the inheritance of stauts, property and children.
- Matrilineal family. This is where the mothers' line determines the inheritance of property, and children.
- Single parent family. This is a family where only one parent is in charge of the family and the children therefore leave with that one parent.

A family is organized on the pillars of love, peace, respect, integrity and proper morals.

Cultural values in our families and societies.

- Cultural values are the core principles and ideas upon which families and the entire community exist.
- On the other hand, values are the collective conceptions of what is considered good, desirable and proper or bad, un desirable, and improper behaviors.
- In other words, they are the principles and standards of behavior.
- Values also refer to important and everlasting beliefs and ideals shared by the members of a family, culture and community.
- Some common values are; fairness, innovation and community involvement. They serve as broad guidelines in all situations and they have a major influence on person's behavior, attitude and perception.

Some of the important culture and family values.

- ✓ Social values like being respectful, honest, truth, positive attitudes, integrity, caring, kind, genuine etc.
- ✓ Moral values like honesty, trust, courageous, patience, etc.
- ✓ Religious values like God fearing, empathy, nonviolent, spiritually sounding, etc.
- ✓ Work values/work ethics like commitment, team work, sense of responsibility, time consciousness, respect, etc.
- ✓ Political and public administration values like exemplary, respect, patriotic, nationalistic, accountability, open minded, law abiding.
- ✓ Recreational and entertainment values like going out for vacations, spending time together, factoring in family games etc.

Importance of family and cultural values/role of culture in the society.

- They help us determine what is right and wrong
- Cultural values help us to establish a foundation for our families/societies and a strong foundation upon which we survive.
- They also guide us in making decisions, parenting children and knowing how to protect the society from danger.
- They help us to identify ourselves with our society and family from which we come from.
- They help us fight against negative foreign influences and practices.
- They help young people understand who they are and where they come from.
- Cultural values also promotes unity and togetherness.
- They are also important in maintaining social standards.
- They provide tools for self-actualization.
- Implementation of cultural values enables the society to function in an orderly and functional way.
- They are also a source of positive attributes to the common welfare of the society. Etc

The concept of gender

Gender refers to either male or female division of species, especially as differentiated by social and cultural roles and behavior.

It's mainly about the roles and responsibilities of men and women in our families, communities and country.

The concept of gender is primarily applied to human beings and has additional connotations.

Gender (sex) role

Gender role or sex is a social, economic and political range of behaviors, activities and attitudes that are generally considered acceptable, appropriate or desirable for people based on their biological or perceived sex.

Table showing key traditional gender-based roles in the family.

The father	The mother	The children
He is the head of the family	He helps the father in the family	Fetching water
Provides security to all family members	Some families however are headed by by mothers.	Looking after animals
Provides leadership in the family	Imparts good morals to the children	Mopping house
Provides basic necessities for the family	Prepares food for the family	Helping with cooking
Initiates children into adulthood	Planting and looking after crops	Washing utensils and clothes

Plans for the family	Helping children to do home work	Taking care of their siblings
Imparts morals to the children	Imparting culture and family values	Running errands
Provides education to the children	Paying bills(single parent)	Compound cleaning
Avails money to the family	Protecting children	Garden work
Building a new house to shelter the family members	Producing children	Collection of firewood
Paying home bills	Disciplining children	Etc.
Owning and controlling of family wealth. Etc	Paying school fees.	
Preparing boys for future marriage, etc	Imparting sex education unto girls, etc	

The changing roles of women and men in the modern society.

In modern society roles have continued to change, the traditional roles that were used to be played by men only are now days being taken up by women and vice versa. This has been promoted through the emphasis of women emancipation and equality between women and men.

So both men and women play the following roles;

- Heading the family
- Providing security to family members
- Providing leadership in the family
- Providing basic necessities to the family
- In the medical sector there are a number of women doctors, nurses, surgeons etc.
- Women are now venturing in all types of businesses
- Women have also excelled in leisure and hospitality industry
- We also have women in the transport sector working as drivers, conductors, pilots etc.
- There are well placed women in the army
- Women are also playing big roles in the church.
- In engineering, there are women engineers
- Women are also paying school fees for children
- Initiating children into adulthood
- Planning for the family
- Working in factories
- Fishing in lakes
- Building of homes
- Etc.

4

Cultural institutions and their leaders in Uganda.

These are social, economic and political organizations which derive their power, legitimacy, influence and authority from a particular people or community. These were mainly in the pre-colonial period.

In Uganda, the traditional cultural institutions were abolished by former president Milton Obote in 1967 and re-reinstated by President Yoweri Kaguta Museveni in 1993

There are 56 ethnic groups in Uganda. They have traditional cultural institutions and some were restored and others not.

Restored institutions included buganda kingdom, bunyoro kingdom, busoga kingdom, tooro kingdom, bufumbira, bamasaaba chiefdom, bukonjo, alur, acholi, adhola, lango, buruuli chiefdom, kooki chiefdom etc.

A table showing the cultural institutions in Uganda and their leaders.

Kingdom/chief dom	Cultural leader	Installation date.
Buganda	Kabaka Ronald Muwenda Mutebi	24th july 1993
Bunyoro	Omukama Solomon Iguru	24th july 1993
Ankole	Omukama John Patrick Barigeya Ntare VI	20th November 1993
Busoga	Kyabazinga Wiliam Wiliberforce Gabula Nadiope IV	13th September 2014
Alur	Rwoth Ubim Olarker Rauni III	1st august 2000
Acholi	Rwot Acana II	15th January 2005
Iteso	Emorimor Augustine Osuban	4th may 2004
Adhola	Moses Stephen Owor	7th august 1999
Koki	Kamuswaga Apollo Sansa Kabumbuli III	15th may 2004
Azzu	Ephraim Kebbi	14th june 2008

Rwenzuru	Omumbere Irema Ngoma I	19th october 2009
Lango	Chief Yosam Odur Ebii (won Nyaci)	10th December 2005
Toro	Omukama Oyo Nyimba Kabamba Iguru Rukidi 1v	17th apirl 2010

Cultural centers in East Africa

A cultural center is an organization, institution, site, building or complex that promotes culture and arts

It is often a meeting point in small communities where people come together to preserve traditions and develop cultural values among members of its community. its private or government owned.

Types of cultural institutions/centers

- ▶ theatres of performing arts
- ▶ museums
- ▶ archives
- ▶ libraries
- ▶ heritage centers
- ▶ worship centers
- ▶ art galleries
- ▶ community cultural centers
- ▶ historical or botanical societies

A table showing major cultural centers in East Africa.

Cultural center/sites	country	Purpose of the center
Ndere troupe cultural centre	Uganda	Traditional dancers and performing artists
Igongo cultural centre	Uganda	Traditional dancers and performing artists
Itaaba kabanyoro	Uganda	Where king wamala made the bagyendanwa drum
Katerke prison dutch	Uganda	Acient history of Buganda kingdom
Samuel baker's fort patiko	Uganda	Anti-slave trade effort by Samuel baker.
Bigo bya mugenyi	Uganda	Ditches of the ancient chwezi
Karambi tombs	Uganda	Burial place for the 3 bunyoro kings

Mparo tombs	Uganda	Burial place for the bunyoro kings
Nakayima tree	Uganda	Oldest tree 400 yrs. Ago
Sezibwa falls	Uganda	Spiritural value, tethering twins
Nyero rock painting	Uganda	Eary stone age painting
Uganda martyrs shrine	Uganda	Martyrdom of the Christian converts
Kasubi tombs	Uganda	Burial place for Buganda kings
Naggalabi buddo	Uganda	Coronation site in Buganda
Wamala hills	Uganda	Grave of kabaka suuna
Stone town Zanzibar	Tanzania	Ancient iconic building
Museum and house of culture Dar es salaamu	Tanzania	Profound fossil, origins of mankind
Village museum Bagamoyo	Tanzania	Display of 16 unique ethnic huts of various ethnic groups
Askari monument	Tanzania	Honoring those who lost their lives during WW2
Nasfasi art space	Tanzania	Multi art center
Kondoa rock art	Tanzania	Caves, paintings of hunter gatherers, ruins of slavery etc.
Ruins of kilwa and sango	Tanzania	Origins of Swahili culture and Islam
Fort jesus	Kenya	Portuguese military fortification
Lamu old town	Kenya	Oldest Swahili settlement
Sacrade mijikenda forest	Kenya	Sacred sites

Importance/contributions of cultural (heritage) institutions/sites/centers

▶ Promotes history that's to say they are living sources of history about the societies where they are located.
▶ They serve as places of tourist attraction thus generating foreign earnings to the communities.

- ▶ They are sources of income to the societies and countries at large through incomes from the tourists.
- ▶ They are sources of revenue to the government because when tourists come to visit these sites, they are taxed.
- ▶ They serve as education centers because they provide useful information and data which the learners need in their studies.
- ▶ They are a source of pride not only to the communities but also to the country at large.
- ▶ They create employment opportunities for people who work there as guides and managers.
- ▶ They preserve the cultural heritage of the society and the country upon which the society depends on.
- ▶ They also provide recreational activities for locals and non-locals.
- ▶ They provide people with connection to certain social values, beliefs, religion, and customs and therefore promote unity among the people who believe in these sets of values. Etc.
- ▶ They provide a sense of belonging. Cultural centers keeps us attached to our religion, beliefs etc. and prevents the younger generation from adopting values that the heritage doesn't represent.

Draw a sketch map of East Africa and on it mark the existing cultural centers/ site
Cultural handcrafts.
These are items made using the hands or basic tools and from indigenous materials.
It is the skill of processing materials by hands using basic hand tools. In Uganda items of hand craft include; bark cloth, traditional baskets, Ugandan jewelry, craft shoes, bangles, beads, etc.

Importances/contributions of handcrafts in East Africa
- • Handcrafts represent our culture and tradition. They represent what we culturally do and stand for.
- • They promote the heritage of a country through the use of local materials made locally by the local people.
- • They help us to preserve the knowledge passed over from the past to the new generation.
- • They are sources of tourist attraction because of their beauty and historical meaning.
- • They are source of revenue to the government through income got from the tourists.
- • They are also source of income and livelihood to those who make them and most of the times they are sold expensively.
- • They provide employment opportunities to the people who directly engaged in making them.
- • They also help in the development of our local industries in East Africa.
- • Making of these crafts helps the people to acquire life support skills which help them to survive on their own.
- • Exportation of these cultural handcrafts provides export earnings for the government and the people who engaged in the business. Etc.

Challenges facing the cultural handcraft industry.

- ❖ Lack of highly educated personals in the sector. Most of the people in this sector are either semi or totally illiterate**.**

- ❖ Lack of enough capital so as to produce finest pieces of handcraft and also to buy raw materials used in making crafts.
- ❖ Inadequate technology used. The artisan lacked modern technology due to lack of exposure and therefore unable to produce quality products.
- ❖ Lack of ready market and market research arising from the lack of market intelligence which limits the marketability of the products.
- ❖ Unfavorable government policies.
- ❖ Rapid change in consumer's tastes and preference.
- ❖ Mass production of a particular product and lack of diversity.
- ❖ Inadequate advertisement which results into lack of consumer awareness.
- ❖ Poverty of the people makes it hard for the people to buy handcraft products.
- ❖ Global pandemics like the COVID19 which seriously affected global movement of people reduced the number of potential buyers of cultural handcraft.

Suggest solutions to the above challenges

The contributions of cultural handcrafts in East Africa
The need to respect other peoples cultures.
The importance of respecting other peoples culture/why do we need to respect other people's culture.
Due to the fact that east Africa is comprised of various ethnic groups therefore people that we stay and live with are from different background with different cultures.
We need to respect people's culture because of the following reasons;
- ➢ It can help to reduce on conflicts and tensions among tribes and communities
- ➢ National unity can be promoted through respecting peoples culture and living together
- ➢ It can lead to peaceful and harmonious co-existence among tribes and communities
- ➢ We can learn some good practices and values if we respect and appreciate peoples culture
- ➢ For enjoyment of employment especially when we are employed outside our local ethnic communities
- ➢ It can help in getting rid of tribalism, suspicion and fear of other people who don't belong to our tribal and ethnic group.
- ➢ It promotes a sense of political nationalism that goes beyond the tribe and ethnicity
- ➢ Intermarriages and inter social relationship can be built and promoted
- ➢ Better communication can be promoted without bias
- ➢ Racial and tribal bigotry can be effectively fought
- ➢ Economic activities like trade can be promoted among various communities, etc.

Cultural youth camps in Uganda.
Youth camps are organizations or voluntary arrangements which tend to bring children or youths together for a particular purpose.
The most notable cultural youth camp in Uganda is **ekisaakaate**, a brain child of queen of Buganda, Nnabagereka Lady Sylvia Nagginda. It was launched in 2007.
It conducts youth camps to teach the youth and children the culture of Buganda as well as leadership skills for national development. Also the non baganda are allowed to attend the ekisaakaate.

Other youth and children camps include;
The annual scout and girl guides camp,
Peer educators academy,
Kafeero foundation,
Digicon Academy
Shiyili for bamasaaba youths
Rwenzururu teenage girls [embale ya nyabaghole]
Bunyoro youth camps
Youth social-cultural camps in Acholi
Religious youth camps by pastor jesca kayanja etc.

Aims and objects of the cultural/moral youth camps:
- ▶ Teaching of morals to the youths
- ▶ provide religious, spiritual and counseling support
- ▶ empowerment or provide personalized mentorship and training to youths
- ▶ act as a voice of the cultural institution to the youths
- ▶ establish a team of volunteers among the youths
- ▶ pass on cultural values to the youth
- ▶ teach methods of reconciliation among youth and the parent relatioship
- ▶ maintaining and ensuring sustainability of achievements after camp
- ▶ teaching skills of child care, medical treatment practice, management of natural resources and housing and construction
- ▶ teaching of athletics and artistic expression
- ▶ etc.

Contributions of the emerging cultural youth camps in Uganda (why are youth camps/cultural camps important)
- ✓ Youth camps offer opportunities for children to socialize since they attract children from different areas.
- ✓ They inculcate leadership skills and values into the children.
- ✓ They help children to gain confidence and growth in maturity.
- ✓ They enable children to get practical skills like learning how to cook, peeling, basket weaving, art and craft skills that helps them to earn a living in future.
- ✓ Youth camps organized at cultural level enable children to appreciate, admire and understand their culture.
- ✓ They help children to engage in meaningful physical activities and mental stimulation.
- ✓ They help children to develop a spirit of independence
- ✓ They provide children with spiritual and counselling support system to maintain emotional stability which can enable them to grow into well behaved personalities.
- ✓ They also help to fight against immorality in the society for example drug abuse, theft among others.
- ✓ They enable children to have fan and enjoy themselves far away from their parents hence promoting emotional development.
- ✓ Youth camps foster team work this is because children are taught to work together.
- ✓ Camps provide mentorship to the youths, they learn a lot from their mentors, professionals, technocrats and those who facilitate them during those camps.

- ✓ The spirit of volunteerism can also be acquired from the youth camps since it's another way of engaging the youth in useful activities.
- ✓ Camps are important for a holistic formation that's to say they enable children to try out new things and also to unplug their potentials.
- ✓ They also help the youth to overcome the spirit of tribalism and racism through interacting with fellow youth from all over the country.
- ✓ Good participants may also acquire jobs after attending the camp activities. They can easily get identified by the future employers.
- ✓ It also teaches them to be humble, obedient, and honest and to be ready to work with other people through promoting discipline and spirit of tolerance.
- ✓ Some youth camps impart the spirit of nationalism and patriotism into the young the generation. Etc.

contribution of emerging cultural/moral youth camps

Challenges facing youth camps in Uganda
- ▶ inadequate funds
- ▶ harsh cultural practices e.g fgm, child sacrifice, child marriage, etc
- ▶ political instability
- ▶ literacy level is low
- ▶ inadequate camp facilitators
- ▶ limited time for the youth to participate in these camps
- ▶ inadequate government support
- ▶ ignorance of the people about the youth camps
- ▶ etc.

suggest solutions to the above challenges
solutions:
- ▶ increase on government support
- ▶ abolish bad cultural practices
- ▶ increase on literacy levels
- ▶ harsh punishment to those who violet the rights of the youths
- ▶ etc.

Cultural traditional transitional justice mechanisms
It refers to the use of the set of judicial and non-judicial measures to readdress the legacy of mass human rights violation.

The value of cultural traditional transitional/restorative justice mechanisms in conflict resolution in East Africa
Justice is defined as the fair treatment of one another.
Traditional justice mechanism is therefore the mode of administering fairness among people according to the beliefs and the norms or tradition and culture of a particular group of people.
Traditional justice mechanism involves the following;
- • Truth and reconciliation about the crimes committed.
- • The involvement of elders

- The involvement of cultural leaders
- It involves total forgiveness
- Round table discussion**:**
- truth telling
- criminal prosecutions
- reparations
- memorialization
- traditional justice
- cultural innervations
- reconstruction and social change
- Compensation
- etc.

Traditional methods of justice used in resolving conflicts.

- Mediation
- Adjudication
- Reconciliation
- Arbitration
- negotiation

Cultural traditional transitional justice mechanisms & conflict resolution

The most recent popular cultural traditional transitional justice case is kanyamunyu murder case

Business man kanyamunyu matthew murdered kenneth akena in lugogo

Values of restorative/traditional justice in conflict resolution in East Africa.

- It promotes the dignity of the victims and offenders and ensures that there is no domination or discrimination in the process of justice dispensation.
- Restorative justice is not rigid. Issues can still be referred to this type of justice at any stage of criminal justice system i.e. pretrial, plea and sentencing.
- It provides all parties and participants with equal opportunities for participation.
- In traditional justice system, victims and offenders have the freedom to access legal advice at any stage of the proceedings.
- In restorative justice system, victims and offenders are also allowed to bring in support persons during the process as long as this doesn't compromise the rights and safety of any party.
- Where confidentiality is required, restorative justice guarantees it. Where necessary the parties involved may agree and vote to exercise confidentiality.
- The principle of fairness is a key in restorative justice process i.e. its equally balanced irrespective of status, race or religion.

- In the restorative justice process the parties involved may have a lee way to withdraw from participating in the process any time depending on the need and without being subjected to any form of punishment.
- The system involves careful preparation of the participants in the process and programs including legal representatives.
- It is premised with the truth, it requires that all parties are provided with complete information about the aims and objectives of the process.
- It protects the rights of participating children. They can only participate in the presence of adults or their parents.
- Compared to the criminal justice system, restorative justice process promotes healing and restitution (among the Acholi it's called Mato Oput).
- There is no disproportionate punishment to the harm caused in restorative justice system.
- It brings out the truth and leads to reconciliation by creating space for remorse, apology, forgiveness, mercy etc.
- It's easy to monitor and evaluate restorative programs internally and externally.
- It ensures, manages and maintains effective complaints mechanism.
- Etc.

Table showing the comparison/differences between the traditional justice and modern/criminal justice.

African traditional court system	Modern/criminal court system
Basically oral, no writing is involved	Involves written sentencing by the judges
The judges are the chiefs/kings or local leaders	Trained and appointed judges of the state presides over the court system
Justice is restorative and conciliatory	Justice is retributive and punitive
Justice system has no fixed place	There are permanent court premises
No advocates are required	Offenders may be represented by lawyers
Local language is the medium of communication	English is the medium of communication
May not require an interpreter	May require an interpreter
Elders opinion are highly valued	Court assessors opinions are highly valued
Local leaders play an important role	Local leaders have no role to play
The judges are not paid salaries	Judges are paid monthly salaries
The courts have no clear hierarchy	The court structures are clear
Doesn't consume too much time	The court process is lengthy

No concrete evidence may be required	Judgment depends on the evidence adduced
The cross examiners are not trained	Trained lawyers cross examine
Court sessions are open and can be held any time	Court are run according to schedules
Swearing is done by the name of the spirit of the ancestors.	They swear in the name of the living God through the Bible or Quran.
Court resources are locally mobilized	Court resources are drawn from the consolidated fund

Qtn. Which of the two forms of justice system is very effective in stabilizing the community leadership?

Similarities between the traditional and modern/criminal justice.
❖ In both the burden of proof lies with the accuser (he who alleges must prove)
❖ Both operate on the principle of the presumption of innocence (one is presumed innocent until is proven guilty)
❖ The possibility of appeal is applicable in both courts
❖ They both value the principle of equality before the law
❖ Both courts operate on the principle of fairness
❖ Cross examination is encouraged in both courts
❖ Court cases take place in an open place.
❖ They both emphasize truth and honesty
❖ In both court system there is an authority that presides over them.

The ethnic groups in East Africa

Ethnic group is a group of people that share a common cultural background

I.e., beliefs, values, behaviors, language, religion, ancestry etc.

This is usually handed down from one generation to another.

Main ethnic groups in East Africa.

Table showing main ethnic groups in East Africa

Uganda		Kenya		Tanzania	
Group	%	Group	%	Group	%
Baganda	16.2	Kikuyu	20	Sukuma	17
Iteso	8.1	Luhya	14	Nyamwezi	4
Basoga	7.7	Luo	13	Chagga	3

Banyankole	8.0	Kalenjin	12	makonde	**3**
Bakiga	5.8	Kamba	11	Haya	**2**
Langi	5.6	Kisii	6	Hehe	**2**
Bagisu	5.1	Meru	6	nyakyusa	**2**
Acholi	4.4	Others	15	Others	**67**
Lugbara	3.6	non-africans	1		
Banyoro	2.9				
Batoro	3.2				
Karamojong	2.0				
Others	20.3				

Major causes of ethnic clashes and conflicts among the communities in East Africa.
Ethnic clashes are fights between two or more groups of people with in a country even beyond.
These clashes are also referred to as tribal clashes.
The following are the causes of tribal/ethnic clashes in East Africa;
- o Land shortages among the various communities that contest the sharing of the same piece of land.
- o Population pressure among the ethnic tribes especially when resources like land begin to dwindle.
- o Bad politics i.e. some politicians draw wedge to divide people along party lines.
- o Colonial legacy which left people in East Africa divided through their divide and rule policy used
- o Religious differences have been a source of political disagreement and suspicions between and among ethnic groups.
- o Tribalism in East Africa practiced mainly by political leaders
- o Nepotism and favoritism especially when a particular ethnic group is favored in terms of job opportunities.
- o Inequality in human society can cause ethnic conflict between groups rather than individuals.
- o Political differences and support to the various conflicting political camps.
- o Historical differences
- o The abuse of ethnicity by some political leaders and other members of the society.
- o The internal migrations for example the Bakiga into Bunyoro and the subsequent land grabbing.
- o Lack of equal regional development
- o Corruption which results into poor service delivery to some areas in the country.
- o Attacks and looting of the cows belonging to the neighboring tribes by herdsmen or cattle raiders.
- o Marginalization of some ethnic groups in the country.
- o Availability of arms and ammunitions among certain tribes.
- o Etc.

Effects of ethnic clashes on the people of East Africa.

- The clashes lead to destruction of property of the communities involved since they may include burning of houses and plantations.
- Clashes also leads to un necessary loss of lives. During the process many people can be killed.
- Ethnic clashes lead to underdevelopment this is because the societies involved waste a lot of time in fighting rather than working for development.
- Poverty is one of the impacts of ethnic clashes because these clashes hinder human activities.
- Ethnic clashes lead to displacement of people from their ancestral homes to seek refugee elsewhere.
- The clashes also lead to economic hardships because economic activities like farming and trade are disrupted leading famine.
- They promote disunity among people, distrust and suspicion among the clashing communities.
- They lead to political instabilities. A country cannot be stable when a section of the population is engaged in ethnic rivalries.
- Ethnic clashes can result into civil wars if they are not addressed urgently.
- They also lead to refugee crisis in the country this is due to constant attacks which force people to seek refuge in some areas for safety.
- It can also affect service delivery to the people.
- Ethnic clashes are recipe for neo colonialism. Outside countries take advantage of such situations to intervene by taking sides.

Solutions to ethnic clashes in east Africa.

- ➤ Strong caution should be directed to those who tend to divide the people by advocating the superiority of one tribe over others.
- ➤ Efforts should be made to foster and promote national unity through preaching trust, togetherness, and equality.
- ➤ Those in leadership and authority should ensure equality among all tribes, regions and ethnicities.
- ➤ Resources should be equitably distributed and social services should be extended to all regions without bias.
- ➤ Government should seriously tackle the issue of land disputes and land grabbing.
- ➤ Religious leaders through preaching peace, harmony and peaceful coexistence to all followers.
- ➤ Inter marriages between members of diverse ethnic and tribes should be encouraged.
- ➤ Inter cultural activities like a week of cultural festivals would help to create awareness of the various aspects of cultures in East Africa thus promoting unity.
- ➤ There is need to promote a common national language which is acceptable to all people in the country.
- ➤ A federal system can also help by extending power from the center to the local communities.
- ➤ Peace talks and dialogue should be emphasized to cease fire among the conflicting parties.

- ➢ Promotion of sports activities that cut across all ethnic groups and regions in the country that can bring people together.
- ➢ Societies and individuals should be advised to accommodate all the interests of each other's so that they live harmoniously.
- ➢ Etc.

Activity of integration;

1. In January 2020, Omukama Oyo Nyimba Rukidi of Tooro kingdom started a campaign where he invited kings from Uganda, Kenya, Tanzania and other kingdoms all over the world to the first ever world monarch summit. He was quoted saying "our world today is faced with outstanding challenges not limited to poverty, conflicts, terrorism, and the burden of disease, youth unemployment, cultural conflicts, underdevelopment, and gender-based violence and the climate change emergency so there is need to jointly address these problems.

Tasks

a. As a student of history and political education identify a list of potential invitees to the summit.
b. Suggest an agenda for the world monarch's summit in Tooro kingdom.
c. Using the knowledge of culture and ethnic groups in east Africa suggest the entertainment program for the guests who will attend this summit.

CHAPTER 05: STATE FORMATION IN EAST AFRICA (FORMATION OF PRE-COLONIAL STATES)

Key words to be used;

Centralized

Decentralized

State

Stateless

Clan

Learning outcomes:

a. Understand the centralized and non-centralized states in east Africa.
b. Know the characteristics of centralized and non-centralized societies.
c. Understand the distinction between the centralized and non-centralized societies.
d. Explain the factors that contributed to the growth and decline of pre-colonial societies.

Pre-colonial states: these were states founded in East Africa before the colonial era i.e. between 1200-1800. They were founded by the different groups of migrants who came into East Africa from around 1000ad while some were founded as result of the collapse of Bunyoro Kitara Empire.

However, each individual state may or have its own oral traditional theory which tries to explain its origin. Some may even have more than one for example Buganda.

It's important to note that the process of state formation was gradual. They all started as small communities of families and clans but with time some achieved an advanced level of Administration.

During the process of state formation two types of states/ societies were formed i.e., centralized and decentralized societies (segmentary/stateless).

Centralized states/societies

These were kingdoms / empires/ monarchies ruled by one ruler who had absolute power. They were kingdoms which had a central authority.

Examples in East Africa

1. Bachwezi
2. Buganda
3. Bunyoro
4. Ankole
5. Wanga
6. Karagwe
7. Batembuzi

General characteristics of centralized states

Politically; political organization formed the basis of the centralized states

1. They had only one ruler [omukama for Batembuzi, Bachwezi, Banyoro, kabaka for Buganda, Omugabe for Ankole]
2. Leader had absolute powers i.e., he could appoint, promote, demote or dismiss any of his chiefs without consulting anyone.
3. Succession to the throne was hereditary (from father to son or close relative)
4. Had a standing army (ready to raid/ defend the state)
5. Had royal regalia (symbols of power) e.g. royal drum, royal spear etc.
6. The ruler was the last court of appeal i.e. had power over life or death

7. The ruler was assisted by ministers or chiefs e.g. give some examples from Bunyoro, Ankole
8. The kingdom/ state was divided into small units for easy/ effective administration e.g., county level, sub county level.
9. The family was their basic political unity (smallest political unity)

Economic characteristics

1. They carried out cultivation (mainly Buganda)
2. Some were pastoralists (Bachwezi, Ankole)
3. Carried out barter trade with their neighbours
4. Carried out long distance trade
5. Fishing was also carried out
6. Some had a mixed economy (Bunyoro) carried out both cultivation and pastoralism
7. Pottery was also carried out
8. Salt mining (Bunyoro)
9. Bark cloth making (Buganda mainly- Bunyoro on a small scale)
10. Hunting was also carried out by skilled hunters (Buganda, Ankole, Bunyoro,Karagwe)

Social characteristics

1. Divided into social classes (Buganda, Ankole, Bunyoro, karagwe)
2. Believed in the supreme god (give the name of the supreme god)
3. Believed in other small gods
4. Divided into class
5. Slept in grass thatched huts
6. They carried out marriage ceremonies
7. Believed in their ancestral spirits
8. Celebrated important event
   Factors for the development of centralized societies

b) Decentralized societies/ stateless/segmentary/non- centralized

These were societies which did not have a central authority. They were ruled segmentary and their rulers exercised their authority only in their units (clans) of central.

Examples

1. Nyamwezi
2. Chagga
3. Hehe
4. Bena
5. Gogo
6. Iteso

7. Acholi
8. Busoga
9. Langi
10. Alur
11. Kikuyu
12. Nandi
13. Akamba
14. Masai
15. Galla

General characteristics

Political characteristics

1. Had many rulers (each clan had a leader)
2. Leaders (rulers) were appointed
3. Kept small scattered armies (each clan kept its own army)
4. Had royal regalia
5. Had a council of elders (kiama for the kikuyu, wanyampala for Nyamwezi)
6. Divided into age sets (Age groups)
7. Clan was their largest political unity
8. Family as their basic political unity

Economic characteristics

11. They carried out cultivation
12. Some were pastoralists
13. Carried out barter trade with their neighbours
14. Carried out long distance trade
15. Fishing was also carried out(expect the kikuyu)
16. Some had a mixed economy carried out both cultivation and pastoralism
17. Pottery was also carried out
18. Salt mining
19. Bark cloth making
20. Hunting was also carried out by skilled hunters

Social characteristics

1. Were not divided into social classes
2. Believed in the supreme god
3. Believed in other small gods
4. Divided into class
5. Slept in grass thatched huts
6. They carried out marriage ceremonies

7. Believed in their ancestral spirits
8. Celebrated important event

A state is a territory occupied by one of the constituent administrative districts of a nation

Or

A politically organized body of people under a single government

Or

A group of people comprising the government of sovereign state.

A clan group of people related by blood, kinship or marriage

ACTIVITY
1. **Define the term pre-colonial societies**
2. **Identify the groups of migrants who came into East Africa and led to formation of states.**
3. **State the societies which were founded as result of migration**
4. **Identify the societies which were formed as a result of the collapse of Bunyoro-kitara Empire.**
5. **Draw a table and indicate the group of each group of migrants and societies they formed.**
6. In groups, make a comparison between the features of the centralized and the non-centralized societies in East Africa. Use a table.
7. Identify the Strength and weakness of both centralised and non centralised societies.
8. Make a reflective journal of all the pre-colonial societies in East Africa in a table form.
9. Draw a sketch map of East Africa and locate the centralized societies.
10. Draw a sketch map of east Africa and locate the decentralized societies.

CENTRALIZED SOCIETIES

BUNYORO DYNASTY/ KINGDOM

ORIGIN AND GROWTH OF BUNYORO KINGDOM
After the collapse of bunyoro Kitara Empire of the Bachwezi, a new and smaller kingdom bunyoro emerged.

Tradition has it that Isingoma Mpuga was the first of the Babiito rulers and therefore became the first Omukama of Bunyoro.

For many years Bunyoro raided her neighbours e.g. Buganda, Toro, Ankole and as a result, the kingdom steadily expanded.

By 1852, Bunyoro kingdom included much of Buganda, Toro, and Ankole.

However, this kingdom was badly administered and by the time of Qmukama Kamurasi, raids had been stopped.

Some kingdoms had even become independent e.g. buganda. This was mainly because of civil wars by the banyoro princes and the administration that was too weak to control them.

However, in 1869 when omukama kabalega became king, he revived and rebuilt bunyoro's power through raids using his army the abarusura.

Kabalega was a strong leader that he invaded toro many times and even fought the british for around seven years.

ORGANIZATION OF BUNYORO KINGDOM

The organization of bunyoro was based on its political, social and economic sphere of life as discussed below.

Politically, Bunyoro was centralized under one king who was the head of government.

Before 1870, Bunyoro kingdom was not tightly governed. In fact, the kingdom was a loose confederation.

The king of Bunyoro absolute powers i.e. promote, demote or dismiss any of his chiefs at will.

The omukama also acted as the chief judge he also had the authority over life and death.

The king had a chain of officials who were in charge of different duties and responsibilities e.g. security duties, traditional rituals, providing food and women to the king.

Bunyoro kingdom was divided into provinces and each under a provincial chief who was in charge of the day-to-day administration of the provinces.

The kingdom was further divided into districts and counties each under a chief.

Most of the chiefs resided at the omukama s court, this was intended to ensure loyalty to him, they could only move to their respective provinces with the permission of omukama.

These chiefs had to provide to the omukama gifts like ………………………a s well as to sever him in the army at all time.

The chiefs were also responsible for tax collection and ensuring that there is law and order in their respective areas of control i.e. …………….

In case of war, all the able-bodied men would be called upon to form an army and a general would be appointed by the omukama to head the army.

This therefore suggests that bunyoro originally had no standing army. However, during the reign of kabalega, bunyoro developed a standing army known as abarusura.

Socially, the banyoro were divided into classes i.e. babiito, bairu and bahima

The babiito were the royals, the Bahima owned cattle and were very rice and the Bairu were poor cultivators and looked after cattle.

The banyoro worshipped a number of gods but the greatest was the creator Ruhanga.

However, Ruhanga had no priest or temple and people didn't pray to him for assistance because they believed that he had done all his work.

Each clan in bunyoro had a favorite god and even families had individual gods.

However, there were also national gods and these included Wamara- god of plenty, mwitanzige- god of Lake Albert, and muhingo- god of war.

The gods could be prayed to directly for favours and in turn offerings were made to them.

The banyoro were united by a similar culture and language.

Bunyoro also had items of regalia e.g. royal bag of millet…

For one to become a king in bunyoro, a number of activities had to be held. These included the killing of all the rival kings i.e. the brothers to the new king.

The king to be would out down the omukewa tree and plant a new one to mark the beginning of his reign.

A number of animals could also be sacrificed to honour the beginning of the new king.

The banyoro also worshipped ancestors and could consult their sprit on matters concerning the kingdom.

Economically, Bunyoro was economically prosperous because it had a mixed economy i.e the bahima kept cattle and the bairu carried out cultivation of mainly grains.

The banyoro carried out trade with their neighbors like Buganda for bark cloth in exchange for salt

They were also active long-distance traders i.e. they traded with the khartumers from Sudan for guns gun power in exchange for ivory and slaves.

Fishing was also carried out by the banyoro especially those who stayed near lakes like

Pottery was also carried out mainly by the bairu and the products would be exchanged with the neighbors.

Salt mining was another important economic carried out by the banyoro. It was carried out in lake katwe , some of the salt would be exchanged with neighbors while some given to cows.

In order To ensure political and economic strength of the kingdom, it was only da king to trade in ivory and guns.

Bark cloth was carried out although this was not done on a large scale as it was in Buganda.

Hunting was also carried out by skilled hunters for

Tributary states also had to paid revenue to Bunyoro

In conclusion, the organization of Bunyoro was based on its political social and economic activities.

FACTORS THAT LED TO RISE AND DEVELOPMENT OF BUNYORO KINGDOM COLLAPSE OF THE CHWEZI EMPIRE

- Effective centralized system of Administration
- Participation in Long Distance Trade
- Taxes from tributary states
- Regional trade
- Mixed economy
- Development of standing army
- Able rulers
- Good climate
- Presences of weaker neighbours
- Royal regalia
- Division of labor
- Unity

DECLINE OF BUNYORO KINGDOM
Poor leadership

Constant conflicts and power struggle among the Royal family

Rise of buganda

Loss of Trade to buganda

Abolition of slave trade

Natural calamities like drought

Decline of Long-Distance Trade

European imperialism

Bunyoro had very many enemies. She was always fighting with her neighbours to the extent that even when the British attacted her none of the neighbours helped.

 Decline in the standing army

Exilation of omukama kabalega

THE KINGDOM OF BUGANDA

ORIGIN OF BUGANDA KINGDOM

The kingdom of Buganda which lies east of Bunyoro was the biggest, most powerful and well-organized kingdom in the interlacustrine region.

The kingdom got established in the northern shores of Lake Victoria.

The origin of the kingdom is not very clear however, a number of theories have been put forward to explain its origin.

Buganda was originally part of bunyoro Kitara Empire of the Bachwezi but sprung up after the collapse of the vast empire.

The baganda are said to have come from different places before setting, this is explained by some traditional views or claims maintained by the baganda clans.

According to oral tradition in Buganda, the kingdom was founded by Kintu who was the first Muganda king and he is believed to have come from the direction of MT Elgon. In around 1314

Kintu is said to have entered Buganda through the eastern direction i.e. through bugisu, budama, Busoga and finally into Buganda.

Kintu is said to have seized power from all the existing clans in Buganda (area/region) and crowned himself leader of all the clans (sabataka) thus the first king.

Kintu is said to have come with 13 clans of the present-day clans in Buganda.

Another tradition from bunyoro maintains that the kingdom of Buganda was founded by Kato kimera who came from bunyoro in around 1574ad.

Kato kimera was believed to have been a twin brother to Isingoma Rukidi Mpuga the founder of the Luo-Babiito dynasty of bunyoro.

It's believed that kimera curved buganda from bunyoro Kitara which was on the verge of collapse.

Kato is said to have come with 6 of the present clans in Buganda.

Other traditions claim that Buganda originated from the Bantu clans that lived in the area way back in around 1000ad thus they came from nowhere and therefore they were natives of buganda.

Another theory which explains the origin of Buganda maintains that the kingdom was founded by unknown clans which came from Ssese Island and settled in Buganda.

Whatever the argument, what is certain is that Buganda kingdom originated from what is present day busiro, kyadondo and mawokota.

The baganda who inhabit the area belong to the wider group of the interlacustrine Bantu or western Bantu from Congo and formed the largest Bantu grouping in Uganda.

By the 17th century, Buganda had expanded to cover Ssingo, Gombo and Butambala. It was kabaka Kateregga who captured these counties from bunyoro.

Under kabaka Jjunju, Buganda expanded to include Buddu and kooki. These were also annexed from bunyoro..

In around the 18 century mawogola, buruli bulemeezi and bugerere were all annexed to buganda. This was at the expense of bunyoro declining power.

 In the last half of the 19th century, kabaka mawanda tried to annex Busoga but his efforts were unsuccessful. It was not until kabaka kyabaggu's reign that Busoga was overrun.

Therefore, buganda reached its greatest size and power in the last half of the 18th and beginning of the 19th centuries.

THE GROWTH AND EXPANSION OF BUGANDA

As earlier noted, Buganda sprang up after the collapse of the Chwezi empire in around the 16th century.

Buganda started as a small state made up of only kyadondo busiro and mawokota.

Buganda's systematic expansion began with kabaka Kateregga in around the 17th century who expanded the borders of the kingdom to Gomba, Butambala and singo.

In around the 18th century, many immigrants arrived from bunyoro, MT Elgon,and the Ssese islands thus increasing buganda's population.

In the mid-18th century 1750, kabaka Jjunju waged war on /against bunyoro and managed to annex the iron rich province of Buddu. All the local clans were forced to join Buganda.

He also managed to bring kooki under Buganda's control.

Kabaka ssekamaanya continued the expansion of buganda , he annexed buwekula and bwela and addes them to buganda.

In the last 19th century kabaka mawanda wanted tried annex Busoga but his efforts were unsuccessful. It was not until kabaka kyabaggu's reign that Busoga was overrun.

In around the 19th century, mawogola, buruli, bulemeezi and bugerere were annexed to Buganda and this was at the expense of bunyoro's declining power.

Between 1831-1851, kabaka ssuna finally attacked bunyoro and crushed it

When the Europeans came, Buganda's power increased even more. Kabaka mutessa1 managed to get military assistance inform of guns from the Europeans and used them to fight bunyoro.

The 1900 Buganda agreement gave Buganda the two lost counties i.e. bugangaizi and buyaga from bunyoro thus increasing Buganda's counties.

In conclusion, by the 19th century, buganda was at the peak of its greatness. It stretched from Lake Albert in the west, river Nile in the east and boarded by the bahaya states in northern Tanzania.

FACTORS THAT LED TO THE RISE, GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT OF BUGANDA KINGDOM

Buganda was one of the most powerful kingdoms in the Interlacustine region, located east of bunyoro kingdom. The kingdom rose and developed as a result of both internal and external factors.

Buganda's size that's geographically or originally. Buganda was a small kingdom that comprised of mawokota, kyadondo and busiro counties thus it could easily defend itself and could be effectively administered.

Presence of a strong army. Buganda had a powerful standing army abatabazi that was well equipped with spears and later with guns. This army was used to raid and expand the kingdom and as well as to defend it.

The king also had the protection of a strong royal body guard abambowa that ensured stability around him and in the kingdom therefore leading to the growth and development of the kingdom.

Able leaders kabaka. The kingdom of buganda was blessed with capable kings known as kabaka who highly developed and expanded the kingdom through raids e.g. kabaka Kateregga who captured………….kabaka jjunju

The kingdom also had centralized system of administration with the kabaka as the most powerful with absolute powers assisted by the katikiro prime minister and the chiefs who were appointed by the king and were answerable to him. This promoted stability in the kingdom thus leading to its development.

Absence of succession disputes right from kabaka ssemakokiro. Not only would the king choose his successor, but also all the brothers to the successor were killed or imprisoned so that they would never over the new king.

Later the system was changed whereby it was the katikiro and the mugema head of nkima clan who were supposed to choose and crown the new king from the son of the late king thus kingship in Buganda was hereditary.

The kabaka also married from every major clan in buganda so as to promote and create unity in the kingdom and as well as loyalty to kabaka.

The kabaka also promoted loyalty by rewarding his chiefs with land, wives, slaves and others.

The baganda also showed loyalty, hospitality and discipline towards their king which also helped the kingdom to develop.

All conquered states/counties by Buganda from her neighbours were governed by chiefs appointed by the kabaka himself. They were therefore controlled from the center and could hardly break away.

The conquered states also contributed to buganda's growth and development since buganda acquired tributes in form of taxes and commodities like salt, iron ivory.

The conquered people were easily incorporated and absorbed into the kiganda society and all subjects were treated equally to ensure justice which also led to stability and thus growth and development of the kingdom.

Trade also contributed to the growth and development of Buganda i.e. trade with their neighbours from whom they acquired what they did have e.g. salt cattle and dairy products.

From around 1840s, Buganda started to trade with the Arabs and Swahili trade from the coast from whom they acquired guns which they used to raid and defend their neighbours and kingdom respectively.

Buganda was also able to get revenue through levying taxes on the caravans passing through the kingdom which they used to develop the kingdom.

Availability of rich agricultural resources, Buganda was blessed with plenty of rainfall and fertile soils which led to successful agriculture. This ensured the production of enough food especially makoote throughout the year to feed the increasing population and the army.

Buganda also had different sources of wealth e.eg lakes, land, rivers iron deposits e.t.c. which contributed to the development of the kingdom.

The kingdom also had well developed roads running from the capital to counties and sub-counties which eased the movement of people and the transportation of goods from one area to another.

The homogeneous type of population with a common tradition, language and cultural practices also led to the development of the kingdom because they fostered unity among the people baganda.

Buganda was also strategically located and had natural defence barriers i.e. lake victoria in the south, and river Nile in the east thus had only to focus on her western border.

Division of labour in Buganda also led to the growth and development of the kingdom i.e. women did all the domestic work and even supplied food enabling men to go to war and defend the kingdom and also engage in other activities like hunting.

The coming of Europeans (British) strengthened Buganda's position within the region i.e. they gave Buganda help especially militarily against her enemies like bunyoro.

The 1900 Buganda agreement gave Buganda the two lost counties of bugangizi and buyaga as a reward for her support to the British which increased her size.

Missionaries also introduced formal education and western cultures (modernity) which improved on people's living conditions.

In conclusion, buganda was a very powerful kingdom within the interlacustrine region and the English explore Herny Morton Stanley named it the garden of Eden and its development was as a result of political, social and economic factors

ORGANIZATION BUGANDA/ WAY OF LIFE

Buganda had a very well developed political, social and economic structure which developed gradually over years or generation by generation by the different kings as discussed below.

Political organization
Buganda had a centralized system of administration headed by the kabaka who had absolute powers and final control of land i.e. sabataka.

In administrating the kingdom, the kabaka was assisted by palace officials who included katikiro Prime Minister Head of the Buganda parliament Lukiiko, the treasure Omuwanika head of finances and the chief justice Omulamuzi who was the head of justice.

Below the palace officials were the Bataka (clan leaders) who were chosen from the great families of the kingdom. They were responsible for controlling the land, maintaining law and order and tax collection.

For effective administration, the kingdom was divided into province and districts with several counties Amasaza, sub-counties Amagombolola, parishes Emiruka, and sub-parishes Ebitongole up to the village level.

All the above were administered by faithful chiefs appointed by the kabaka right from the village level.

Each village had a village chief called omutongle who was responsible for law and order and welfare of the village.

The chiefs were supposed to mobilize the people for public works in their respective regions e.g. construction of roads, walls, and collect taxes as well as maintain law and order etc.

The chiefs also had a responsibility of supplying the king with food, timber, bark cloth, fire wood beers whenever they were needed.

All the chiefs were answerable to the katikiro

The kabaka could appoint, promote, demote or dismiss any of his chiefs without consulting any one. The kabaka was also the last court of appeal.

Buganda had a standing army which was well equipped with spears and later with guns from Arab traders.

The conquered places would be administrated by the chiefs appointed by the kabaka. They would promise loyalty and to take on all kiganda culture.

Buganda had a legislative council called Lukiiko. The Lukiiko was made up of clan heads, kabaka's appointees and county chiefs. Its role was to formulate laws and serve the kabaka and his ministers.

The kabaka had royal guards Abambowa whose work was to keep law and order around him. He also had a fleet of canoes on Lake Victoria, palace officials who acted as his spies queen mother Namasole and queen sister Nalinnya who were charged with advising the king.

The kabaka received gift from his subject and chiefs and in return he rewarded them with large chunks of land. This ensured their loyalty to him.

The Buganda had royal regalia which included drums spear, stools, and animal skins. These were symbol of power and were respected.

The system of succession on the throne was that the kabaka had to choose his successor before his death. This minimized succession disputes.

Economic organization
Buganda carried out many economic activities which contributed to the prosperity of the kingdom and made it more powerful.

Agriculture was the major activity carried out by women and children. Though sometime men cleared the land and women did the planting.

Agriculture provided food such as……………………which sustained the population.

The kabaka's cattle was looked after by people from Ankole known as the Abalalo goats, chicken, pigs were also kept by everybody in buganda.

Hunting was also carried out by skillful hunters who could run after buffalos wild pigs and elephants.

Fishing was also carried out by people who lived around lakes and rivers.

Back cloth making was also carried out by the baganda.

Trade was a very important aspect among the baganda because they exchanged goods for goods with their neighbours.

The baganda also participated in long distance trade

Land was used as a source of production and it was owned by the whole community.

The Baganda also practiced iron working and made various iron tools like…………………….

Taxation was another important aspect in the kingdom's economy. Chiefs collected taxes inform of ivory ………………from their subjects and long distance traders.

One would be rewarded depending on how much he collected and handed over to the kabaka.

Tributary states also pay revenue annually to the kabaka as part of their respect for him.

Raids were very important in Buganda's economy. She constantly raided her neighbours like Busoga, bunyoro for slaves, cattle ……………women slaves would be given out by the kabaka as reward to his men while sometime the men slaves were sold to the Arab traders.

Social organization
The society of Buganda was divided into 2 groups i.e. the royal Baami and peasants Abokopi.

The baganda were very religious and they believed in a supreme God Katonda and other small gods like Ddungu for hunting, Musoke for rain, Kibuuka for war, Musisi for rain and earth quakes Kiwanuka for good luck and birth Mukasa for lakes.

Each of these gods had a temple and a priest in charge of the spirits Balubaale called Kabona.

The baganda also praised and worshipped ghost. These ghosts were believed to be very strong and could punish or bless.

The kabaka always presided or officiated at major religious functions and therefore acted as a religious leader in the kingdom.

The baganda also believed in witch craft to solve their problems. Most of the diseases in their society were cured by traditional doctors who used herbs.

There were also sorcerers who were feared because they could cause harm to the people.

The baganda were divided into different clans e.g. engabi, empologoma, enjovu, enkima envuma and others. A marriage btn member of the same clan was not allowed.

Each clan had a clan head, special area of origin and burial sites called ebijja.

The kabaka belonged to the mother's clan and this ensured political stability unity and loyalty as each clan dreamt of producing a kabaka.

The kabaka often married from all major clans of Buganda and this was to ensure political unity and consolidation his relationship with the people.

The baganda also dressed in bark cloth since there were no cotton clothes.

The baganda were also united and spoke a similar language luganda and had strong cultural ties.

Boat racing, dancing, wrestling, drinking and other were common entertainment features within the kiganda society.

Marriage in buganda was polygamous, a Muganda man was free to marry as many wives as he could and this was aimed at having as many children as possible since children were a blessing in society.

Marriage also involved introduction ceremony okwanjula where the girl would introduce her future husband to her parents and without this marriage would be considered illegal.

The baganda also had royal burial sites for their kings like kisubi tombs amasiro, wamala tombs.

A man in Buganda was supreme and had control over his wife and children and he was the boss and his word was final in a home.

Respect for elders was highly stressed, in fact the young ones had to greet elders while kneeling.

The buganda celebrated important event i.e. naming of children, initiation ceremonies, kabaka birthday

Therefore, the organization of buganda involved political, social and economic activities.

Decline of Buganda kingdom

In around the last half of the 19th century, buganda begun to decline due to both internal and external factors

The kingdom had grown too big to be effectively administered. At its peak of power buganda stretched from lake albert in the west, river Nile in the east and boarded by the bahaya states of northern Tanzania.

Due to this vastness, distant areas like Busoga started breaking away from the kingdom which reduced the power and the size of the kingdom.

The location of the kingdom also made it open to foreign interference e.g. it was a lon the central trade that brought in explorers, missionaries traders and later colonialists.

From around the mid-19th century, the kingdom suffered from poor leadership starting with kabaka Mwanga and his successor Daudi chwa.

Mwanga was young, inexperienced and lacked the skills of handing foreigners especially missionaries which made him lose his independence.

Mwanga's character and behavior was inconsistent and not best for a king e.g. the barbaric killing of missionaries and their converts made people lose confidence in the institution of kingship.

Daudi chwa was only 3 years old when he inherited the throne and ruled through regents who also had their own interests.

The period of scramble and partition did not leave Buganda's independence. In 1894 Buganda was declared a British protectorate and with the signing of the 1900 Buganda agreement, Buganda's sovereign status was completely eroded.

Buganda also had many enemies stretching back to the time of its foundation e.g.…………… and when it was attacked by the British, they did not help her.

Buganda's army though equipped with guns from Arab trader, was too weak to fight and defeat the colonialist who had machine guns.

The coming of missionaries and their teachings also weakened the kingdom. Missionaries encouraged through their teachings encouraged their coverts to rebel against the kabaka something that had never happened in the history of the kingdom.

Lake Victoria also opened up Buganda for white imperialists i.e. they used the waters of Lake Victoria to come and conquer Buganda.

The monarchy of buganda was one of those abolished by president Milton obote in 1967, however it was revived in 1993 by the national resistance movement gov't with kabaka Ronald Muwenda Mutebi ii as the king.

Conclusion……………………

THE ANKOLE KINGDOM
Origin of Ankole kingdom

Ankole is found west of buganda and all her earliest inhabitants were hunters and food gatherers who were later joined by the Batembuzi btn 500 and 130County.uu0ad.

Between 1300 and 1500 ad, ankole was taken over the Bachwezi therefore, it was one of the kingdoms that made up bunyoro Kitara Empire.

After the collapse of the Chwezi Empire, the bahinda under their king Ruhinda established the kingdom of ankole.

The bahinda claim to be descendants of the Bachwezi and it is believed that Wamara had married a slave girl (Njunaki) from mbarara and the product of the marriage was a son Ruhinda.

Ruhinda established the Hinda dynasty that ruled ankole until 1967 when obote abolished all kingdoms.

It's said that Ruhinda established a new dynasty of Isingiro which became the origin of ankole kingdom.

Initially, Ankole was called Karo Karungi meaning peaceful land or territory. It was a small area made up of present day Rwampara County.

Between the 15th and 17th centuries, ankole remained a small and insignificant kingdom, its expansion started in 18th century when it produced a number of ambitiousf king who extended its boundaries.

The people who inhabit ankole are called banyakole and they classified into two groups i.e. bairu (lower class peasants and Bahima upper class and cattle owner.

The banyankole speak a similar language called ruyankole.

Factors that led to the rise and development of Ankole kingdom (Research and write the answers)

ORGANIZATION / WAY OF LIFE OF THE PEOPLE OF ANKOLE

Ankole kingdom had a well-organized political, social, and economic set up which united the people and enabled the kingdom to develop with time.

Political organization

The banyankole are descendants of the Bachwezi and belong to western Bantu group.

Ankole had a centralized system of administration.

The rulers of ankole had a title of Omugabe, the Omugabe had a lot of powers and all his decisions were final (absolute powers).

The Omugabe could appoint, promote demote and dismiss any of his chiefs at will.

The Omugabe was assisted by a number of ministers and the most important of all was enganzi (prime minister).

The Omugabe moved everywhere with his prime minister and on many occasions, he acted on his behalf.

The enganzi was also a powerful man with many servants and large herds of cattle.

The Omugabe was also assisted by a chain of chiefs who carried out the day-to-day administration of the kingdom.

The Bahima largely consisted of the ruling class.

The omugabe, queen mother, princes and princesses formed the royal family which resided in the royal kraal or palace.

The kingdom was divided into a number of districts for easy administration e.g. sheema, kazoo, Isingiro Rwampara kashari, igara, kajara, nyabushozi e.t.c.

Each of these districts was under an appointed chief omukungu and they are said to have had a lot of cattle.

The kingdom was further divided into chiefdoms each with its own chief, the chiefs had a major responsibility of keeping law and order and collecting tributes. tributes included beer food cattle millet women which were sent to the omugabe.

During the times of war, the chiefs had to recruit the young able-bodied men into the army.

The banyankole therefor did not have a standing army from the beginning however, in around the mid-18th century, the developed a standing army that used spears, shields, arrows and later guns from Arab traders.

As a symbol of authority, the rulers of ankole had royal regalia and the most important was the royal drum known as bagyendanwa and others included royal crown, bag of millet, spears milk pot.

There was also the royal fire which was never allowed to go out until the ruling king dies.

The banyankole had no culture of fighting, they only fought with those who tried to steal their cattle. However, with time, they carried out minimum raids on their neighbours.

Economic organization of Ankole
The major economic activity among the people of ankole was cattle keeping

They kept long horned cattle however this was dominated by the upper class the bahima who supplied gee, hides, mlik etc.

The banyankole also carried out cultivation however it was mainly carried out by the bar who grew grains like…… .... They also grew bananas, yams, etc.

Iron working was also carried out by the banyankole and they made items like…

Carpentry was also carried and carpenters made beautiful wooden stools, doors,

Banyankole traded with their neighbour in cow products, in exchange for salt from Bunyoro, bark cloth from Buganda

The banyankole also traded with the coastal traders ie Arab and Swahili traders in items like ivory, slaves for guns, gun power, and mirrors

Social organization
The banyankole were divied into two social classes ie the pastoral bahima wo were the rulers and the agricultural bairu who were the subjects.

The bairu were dispersed and a muiru could not dream of becoming a king in ankole

Even marriages btn the bairu and the bahima were considered a social disgrace and highly discouraged.

The banyankole believed in a supreme God ruhanga and prayed to him through other gods and they believed he was the Creator.

However, no sarifices were offered to him as the banyankole believed that there was no need of bothering him after bring them into the world.

Below ruhanga were other small gods to whom sarifices were offered and some of them were kagoro, wamara, kazooba, mugara etc

The spirits of the dead were highly respected in the ankole soicety as they brought favors/ blessings or punishment/curses to their close relatives who were still living.

Sacrifices like cows, goats, beers grains and others were offered to them in the family shrines.

Owing cattle was a sign of presitage and cattle was used for dowry and rewarding faithful servants.

Those with few cows were dispersed by everyone in the society.

The mugabe always acquired the services of any craft man and rewarded them generously with cows, land slaves etc.

2. KARAGWE KINGDOM

Origins

- Karagwe kingdom extended between Rwanda and Burundi, Lake Victoria and the North western part of Tanganyika.

- The settlers in this area were Bantu who carried out farming and grew crops like millet, sorghum.

- They had come from the south west around the 15th and 16th century.

- However the Bantu are said to have stayed in this region for 43 centuries before migrating north East to Bunyoro and Toro.

- Later a section of these returned to Karagwe after the Luo invasion.

- By the time of their return, they had combined with the Chwezi.

- They reached Karagwe around the 16th century and set up the Hinda dynasty.

Political organisation

- ❖ Ruhinda introduced a centralized system of government.

- ❖ The centralized system replaced the clan system headed clan leaders called Muharambwa.

- ❖ Upon the death of Ruhinda; many areas that made up his Kingdom declared themselves independent.

- ❖ Ruhinda used the clans for efficient administration. These clans were not destroyed by the Chwezi immigrants.

- ❖ The clan leaders (Muharambwa) were charged with a collection of taxes, tribute and were also in charge of religious rights.

- ❖ The clans were grouped into eight bigger units for easy administration.

- ❖ The units included Kianja, Bukara, Kyamtwara, Kiziba, Ihangiro, Misenyi, Bugabo and Karagwe.

- ❖ Each of these chiefdoms became a nation called Ihanga and chiefs would dismiss a clan head if his people appealed.

- ❖ The clan heads had political, religious and judicial powers. These were supposed to head clan courts that settled disputes.

- ❖ Age sets were encouraged among the Banyambo and young boys of the same age were called at the chief's residence where they would be trained in military art.

- ❖ After military training, they would be sent home and only recalled in times of military emergency.

- ❖ The few, who were outstanding and very skillful, were sent to the king's court where they learnt correct court manners and language.

ECONOMIC ORGANISATION

- ❖ They were mainly agriculturalists and they grew crops like sorghum, millet and bananas.

- ❖ They also kept the long horned cattle.

- ❖ Iron working was another economic activity and tools which were made included hoes, spears and arrows which were used in agriculture and defense.

- ❖ The people of Karagwe also carried out trade.

- ❖ They exchanged trade items like Ivory, and iron products with Buganda and coastal traders.

SOCIAL ORGANISATION

- ❖ The people of Karagwe believed in ancestral spirits.

- ❖ The Muharambwa was supposed to lead over religious functions.

- ❖ A Caste system (class systems) existed in Karagwe Kingdom with the pastoralists as rulers and farmers as the subjects.

- ❖ Settlement of conflicts was entrusted to the clan leader (Muharambwa) but the head of the chiefdom (Ihanga) was the final man in everything.

DECENTRALISED SOCIETIES

NYAMWEZI

Nyamwezi were the early Bantu migrants in east Africa (Tanzania) in the present day Tabora town. The Nyamwezi didn't exist as a united society before the 19th century.

POLITICAL ORGANISATION OF THE NYAMWEZI

The Nyamwezi lived in numerous self-governing groups without a single governing authority. By the 18th century, they consisted of more than 100 clans and all these groups didn't have a group name by which they could be identified.

Indeed, the name Nyamwezi was given to them by the coastal dwellers when the first trader from Unyanyembe arrived at the east African coast.

The name Nyamwezi meant "people of the moon" since they came from the western side where the moon was first seen.

The self-governing unit was known as Ntemi and members of each unit where related to each other by either kingship or belief in common origin.

However, the Ntemi system achieved a highly organize and efficient type of the government.

The overall chief of a single unit had a title of Ntemi or Mutemi.

The position of the Ntemi was hereditary that's to say it was a son or close relative to succeed him.

The Ntemi was assisted by a council of elders known as Wanyampala who comprised of priests and head men.

There were also other officials who assisted him and these included; Mgawe who was a chief counselor and a ritual leader, Mtwale who was the army leader, Mteko who was the deputy army leader and head of secret service and Kikoma who was in charge of information.

There was also the Minule who was in charge of collecting tributes. Some of these officials inherited their offices while others were appointed by the Ntemi.

They all took orders from the Ntemi.

Below these officials were heads of various settlements called Gungulis and below these were the heads of households known as Wanzenga Makaya.

The Ntemi acted as the ritual leader and priest to his people and therefore anything affecting his health was believed to have an effect on the people and animals.

The Ntemi also carried out other duties for example declaring wars, ensure proper care of the land and also settle disputes, cases of murder, treason and witch craft that were brought to him.

The decisions made by the council of elders were respected by the Ntemi as this counsel was composed of old, experienced and knowledgeable elders.

Militarily, the nyamwezi had no standing army. Each chiefdom had a standing army (small) whose commander would be appointed by the Ntemi.

Succession disputes and increase in population could lead to a split or creation of a new chiefdom along clan ties.

SOCIAL ORGANISATION

The nyamwezi believed and worshipped their ancestors and even offered sacrifices to them.

The Ntemi played a major role as the link between the people and their ancestor and was the only person who could perform certain sacrifices and ceremonial functions.

The Ntemi also kept a divine fire and people were to ensure that it continued burning.

The nyamwezi were people who believed in a powerful god Likube.

The Ntemi was the religious leader of the people.

The Ntemi also offered prayers on behalf of his people for example prayers for good yields, birth and success in battle.

The Ntemi received a lot of respect from the people and could marry as many wives as possible.

The Ntemi was the final man in the judicial system and final court of appeal.

The wellbeing of the land and the people totally depended on the Ntemi'S physical health and observance of social rituals.

Land was highly valued and communally owned by the clan.

The symbols of power for the chiefdom included the shields, spears, royal fire, drum (Royal regalia)

The family and the clan were very important units within the nyamwezi chiefdom as they related kingship, common ancestor which brought them together.

Marriage was polygamous although there were also monogamous homes.

Respect to elders was highly expected of the youth.

When the Ntemi died, the body was buried along with his possessions like food, clothes, wine and others to cater for the life after death.

ECONOMIC ORGANISATION

The Nyamwezi were originally cultivators however with time some of them carried out pastoralism due to the poor soils.

They also carried out fishing in river like ugombe, ugalla, ugowe and in Lake Tanganyika.

In the 19th century, the nyamwezi became active Long distance Traders and some of their goods included salt, iron implements live stick and ivory.

In trade the Nyamwezi acted as guides as their participation in this trade increased, the nyamwezi became rich and their political system underwent a change where large state were built by mirambo and Nyungu Ya Mawe hence developing a centralized system of governance.

Trading was the most important economic activity for the nyamwezi. They traded with their neighbours like the Vinza for salt and the zinza for iron tools and other items.

They controlled the central trade route and caravans passing through their land had to be taxed.

Pottery and craft making was also common and they made baskets, mats, fish traps and others

They also hunted especially elephants for ivory

They grew crops like millet, sorghum, potatoes, yams and others

They also set up national farm stores (granaries) that were directly under the control of the Ntemi.

The nyamwezi society observed the new crop harvest.

There was division of labour within the society which enabled the men to be free and concentrate on developing their skill in trading, fishing, hunting, raiding, fighting, iron working and others.

By 1800, the nyamwezi had made trading contacts with the coastal people and the usually moved in caravans during the dry season.

Head portage became their full business occupation.

Seyyid said also negotiated with the nyamwezi envoy for the security of the Arab caravans.

THE ITESO

The Iteso belong to the same group of people like the Karamojongs known as plain Nilotes

They are believed to have migrated from Ethiopia and first settled around Lake Turkana and by 1500ad, they had settled in the present day Teso land and established themselves there

Political organization

The iteso had a decentralized system of administration i.e. they had no Central authority.

The latest political unit was a clan known as Ateker and each clan had a head known as Emuron.

The smallest political unit was a family. Many families formed a clan known as ateker

The Emuron used to convene meetings held at regular intervals.

At these meetings disputes between the members of two or more clans were settled.

The Emuron was also responsible for making rain, blessings men going for battle, and he possessed divine powers.

They were also other leaders like arumam who was a military leader and was chosen in battle, kareban who was a village ambassador and a dispute settler.

The Iteso had no standing army but in case of any external attacks or raids, military leader would bring their forces together comprising of young men.

Economic organization

Economically, the Iteso were pastoralists though they rarely slaughtered their cattle for meat.

Some little cultivation was carried out of mainly grains and their staple food was millet, they also grew sorghum…..

The Iteso also traded among themselves and with their neighbours like acholi

They mainly sold cattle products in exchange for items like salt, iron implement

Fishing was also carried out on small scale

Social organization

The Iteso believed in a supreme good called Edeke

The Iteso were linked in clans and indeed interclan marriages were encouraged to promote unity.

Elders were given great respect among the Iteso and played many roles like educating young ones about their society.

Taught them about the economic history not the Iteso and guided people on social matters like initiation and marriage ceremonies.

By the 15th century, the Emuron had become a very important figure because of the roles he played and was believed to be a gift from God.

THE KIKUYU

The kikuyu are Bantu speaking people. They are linked to the shungwaya dispersal were their ancestors are believed to have come from.

They lived on the slopes of mt Kenya and adopted iron working to clear the forest for cultivation in the area of their predecessors.

Political organization

The kikuyu had a decentralized system of administration with a council of elders called kiama.

Kikuyu land being mountainous, each ridge formed a territory for a single family **Mbari**

Their basic political unit was a family called mbari. The family was headed by a family head.

Each mbari was led by a council of elders (kiama) which was headed by muramati and the office of muramati was not hereditary but was entrusted to an experienced elder.

The muramati performed judicial functions

Generally, the kikuyu were organized into clans corresponding to the nine daughters of Gikuyu.

Each clan was made up of age groups called Riika, these were then divide into age sets I.e. each age set was given its own individual name which offend marked a particular event.

The kikuyu had no standing army but soldiers belonged to a certain age set.

In case of any aggression, the youth would be mobilised to defend their society.

The soldiers were organized under a leader who acted as their spokesman before the kiama

Junior warriors trained for physical duties assigned to them by the elder e.g clearing land, defending the village from being attacked by wild animals, making path, constructing kraals for cattle.

Senior warriors were allowed to marry after which they became junior elders.

After further payment of goats and beers, they became senior elders and we're admitted to the council of elders kiama

The kiama passed laws and administered Justice that was enforced by elders

Cases were tried by a court and the kiama attended with Representatives of the accused and all those involved in the dispute.

There were no prisons and therefore the elders tried cases and charged fines.

The kikuyu had no classes, it was an egalitarian society and therefore there was equality among the kikuyu.

Social organization
The kikuyu believed a supreme good ngai who manifested /administered himself through the sun, thunder, Moon rainbow lighting.

Ngai could only be approached by the community of elders as a group not as individuals.

Mt Kenya was believed to be ngai's home and shrines therefore built around the slopes of the Mt

Ngai was consulted in all stages of life i.e at birth, marriage death initiation, he was also consulted during difficulties like famine,floods epidemic diseases.

Among the kikuyu, evil spirits and witches were associated with disaster like famine floods epidemic and therefore nin the evening drums were sounded, horns were blown and the ground beaten by the elders to chase evil spirits.

The kikuyu also highly respected the spirit of their ancestors, they were believed to have the power to bless or punish.

The kikuyu were also divided into clans and each was made up of age groups **Riika** which were further divided into age sets.

Initiation to the age was after circumussion which was done every after five years for the boys

Members of the same age set worked and would be taught together and each age set had a unique name that was never repeated.

Among the kikuyu circumussion was carried out on both the boys and girls.

Inheritance among the kikuyu followed the mother's lineage i.e. land, children belonged to the mother.

Economic organization
The kikuyu were predominantly cultivators and mainly grew grains like

They also grew bananas etc. mainly for home consumption.

There was division of labor and the kikuyu i.e. men did most of the heavy work and women did weeding, harvesting.

The kikuyu practiced iron working and made tools like, panges

They kikuyu kept some domestic animals like goats, sheep, and cattle for food.

The kikuyu also made local crafts like

The kikuyu traded with their neighbours like the Masai,Embu,kamba in iron equipment for salt, cattle products.

The kikuyu had very well organized market centers like Gaita,Karatina, Gakinda Malthithi etc.

The kikuyu also participated in Long distance trade in which they supplied ivory, slaves to the coastal traders in exchange for guns

Land among the kikuyu was communally owned hence it wasn't fragmented like in other societies.

Fishing wasn't carried out by the kikuyu because they didn't have water bodies and neither were chicken kept coz the mainly grew grains.

THE MASAI

The Masai belong to the Lake Turkana group of kalengin who included among others the kipsingis,

They are believed to have migrated from the suku hills of Ethiopia and first settled around Lake Turkana

Btn 1600-1700, they moved southwards and settled around the Usain-Gishu plateau and later split up into subdivisions i.e the porko/purko Masai who were pastoralists and the kwavi Masai who were agriculturalist.

Political organization

The Masai had a decentralised system of administration and their baic political unit was a clan.

The Masai society was locally organized in small units. These units were further divided into a number of small independent subdivisions.

The Masai lived in small groups with clan leaders known as Laibons.

The laibon was usually aboy who got water for his cattle but later became a cultural expert and his authority depended on his prophetic ability.

The Laibon passed on his prophetic power to his descendants.

The Laibon also had power to act as a priest and presided over religious functions.

During the 19th century, the Laibon became a military and political leaders in Masai society. He exercised a great deal of authority to his people.

The Laibon also took important decisions affecting society in various aspects of life.

Economic organization

The Masai were economically divided into two namely the kwavi Masai who were semi-agriculturalists and the porko/ purko Masai who were pastoralists.

Trade was practiced by the Masai and they traded with their neighbours like

The two subtribes of the Masai often engaged in cattle rading and warfare. This was because they believed that God gave them all the cattle and nobody else was expected to have cattle.

Cattle was highly valued as a source of pride and livehood.

From cattle, the Masai obtained food, milk blood and skins

Craft industry was part of the economic organization of the Masai and they made items like

Long distance trade

Social organization

Socially, the Masai spoke a common language (Masai) that followed a common way of life and they had similar beliefs.

The Masai were divided into clans that were further divided into age sets and members of the same age set spent most of the time training and preparing for cattle raids.

Successful raids were a source of presitage and a successful raids for a boy proved his manhood

The masai practiced ancestoral worship and offer sacrifices to their ancestoral spirits.

The Masai believed in a supreme god **enkai** who was the source of life and death.

The Masai lived in many attas which were built by women.

 THE ACHOLI

The Acholi are found along the northern shores of Lake Kyoga. They emerged out the intermarriage between the Luo and the Madi

Political organization

Political power was centered on the Rwoth

He was the political head and the religious leader of his people

He ruled on the advice of a council comprising elders from all the major clans

He gave favours according to work

Had no centralized administration

Political affairs were handled by the clan, each with its own rituals and regalia

Each family belonged to a particular clan that shared a common ancestry

Clan councils upheld traditional, religious and legal customs

They controlled the course of revenge

The family was the basic social unit

The man had a lot of powers over his wife and children

The jogo were the village heads, appointed by the Rwoth

Their duty was to maintain law and order in their respective villages

And to collect taxes and tribute

They had no standing army

It was the duty of the youth to defend society in case there was need

They were also supposed to carry out raids for cattle

Economic Organization

Carried out agriculture growing cereals like millet, peas, beans and sorghum

There main economic activity was pastoralism, keeping short horned cattle

They highly valued cows for prestige, bride wealth and rewards

Traded with their neighbours like the Langi, Banyoro and Sudanese

Fishing was also carried out by those who stayed near rivers

Social organization

They believed Jok-Lubanga as the creator and sustainer of the world

They always prayed to through the spirits

The Rwoth was the religious head of his people

He was believed to have direct links with the ancestors

Inheritance followed the fathers' side

Land was communally owned

It was the duty of the clan head to protect it on behalf of his people

TOPIC 6. RELIGIONS IN EAST AFRICA

KEY WORDS:

Ancestral worship

Buddhism

Christianity

Evangelism

Faith

Gods

Martyrs

Islam

Witch

Orthodox

Priest.

LEARNING OUT COMES:

- ➡ Understanding the religions that existed in East Africa before the coming of foreign religions in East Africa.

- ➡ Know the Christian and Islamic religious groups that came to Uganda in the 19th century, why they came and where they have influence.

- ➡ Know the activities carried out by the European Christian Missionaries.

- ➡ Understand the impact of foreign religions Uganda.

➨ Understand why these Christians and some Muslims were killed at Namugongo

Define the term Religion.

Religion is the belief that man's destiny and life on earth is controlled by a super natural being or powers whose existence is beyond the knowledge of man.

Or It is the belief in and worship of super human power or powers especially God or gods.

East Africa has 3 main religions which are; Christianity, Islam and Traditional indigenous religion. The largest population is Christianity which includes protestants, Catholics, seventh day adventists, Orthodox and Pentecostal Christians among others.

RELIGIONS IN EAST AFRICA BEFORE THE COMING OF FOREIGN RELIGIONS:

Before the coming of foreign religions east Africa had one religion ie **African tradition Religion (ATR).**

African tradition Religion, it refers to the indigenous religions of the African people. Each society had its own gods and way of worship. For example the Baganda had gods like mukasa, musoke, lubaale etc, Basoga had kiwanuka, lubaale, musis etc, Banyoro had wamara,etc. These gods had various roles to play in the societies e.g kibuka for war, lubaale for L.victoria, musoke for rain, etc.

Elders in the clan had a duty of offering sacrifices to the ancestral gods asking for blessings such as good harvests, rain, sunshine, victory and good health. These sacrifices were in form of animals, birds, grains etc.

However all the east African societies believed in the existence of the Supreme Being though He was given different names like katonda among the Baganda, Ruhanga among the Banyoro/Batoro/ Banyankore, kibumba among the Basoga, lubanga among the Langi, Edeke among the Acholi, nabende-were among the Bagisu, mungu among the Alur, imana among the Bafumbira, ngai among the Kikuyu, likube among the Nyamwezi, Ruwa among the Chagga, mulungu among the Akamba, Enkai/Engai amomg the Masai etc.

NOTE: African Traditional Religion was a way of life of Africans in which ancestors were part of their life. It was found in their day to day life/major events of life like birth, naming, initiation, marriage and death.

A table comparing the features of Ancestral gods and the Supreme God.

Supreme God	Ancestral god(s)
Singular	Many
First letter is in upper case	All letters is in the lower case
Overall creator	Subset of gods
Normally has many names	Each god has only one name
He is knowledgeable and rational	Not knowledgeable and invisible
He is believed to be omnipresent	Not omnipresent and known by a particular tribe
He is in heaven and every where	Lives in mountains, valleys, forests, etc.
Worshiped in churches and mosques	Worshiped in shrines, under big trees and mountains
Has no spirit mediums except priests, pastors,	Has spirit mediums like medicine men, diviners.

ACTIVITY;

In groups carry out a discussion on the following;

- (i)   What their ancestors believed in?
- (ii)   The names of the gods they believed in.
- (iii)   Why did they believe in them?
- (iv)   Is African Traditional Religion still relevant today? Why or why not. Compile your findings in your note book.

GROUP TASK

Discuss what the pictures below show about traditional religions in East Africa

TABLE 2: DIFFERENCES IN PRINCIPLES OF FOREIGN & TRADITIONAL RELIGIONS IN E. A

	TRADITIONAL RELIGION	CHRISTIANITY	ISLAM
WORSHIP CENTERS			
BELIEFS			
DRESS			
DIET			
CUSTOMS			

FOREIGN RELIGIONS IN EAST AFRICA

When foreigners came to east Africa, they came with their beliefs which they slowly imposed on the Africans through conversation. Islam was the first foreign religion to be introduced to east Africa. It was followed by Christianity. Christianity came to east Africa primarily through European missionary efforts which began in the 19th century.

A] Islam

B] Christianity that was introduced by Christian missionaries.

Other religions included; Buddhism, Judaism, Hinduism, Sikhism, Bahai, etc

ISLAM RELIGION IN EAST AFRICA

Islam was the first foreign religion in east Africa which originated from Arabia. It begun with the Indian Ocean traders at the coast and long distance trade in the 1840s. These traders were mainly Arabs from countries like Persia, Oman, Syria, etc.

Islam at the east African coast was spread by four major groups which included

(i)   Seyyid Said's group (1790-1856)
(ii)   Zaid's group, this was a shia sect that came in 725AD
(iii)   Al Hassan(sunni) this group arrived at the east east African coast around 750AD.
(iv)   Shiraz group, this arrived at the coast towards the end of the 19th century from southern Persia.

NB: Islam reached Uganda in 1844 when the first Arabs reached the palace of kabaka Mutesa 1.

The Muslim missionaries included Arab preachers, traders, Sheikhs, ie Ahmed bin Ibrahim the first to reach kabaka's palace in Buganda, etc.

REASONS FOR COMING OF MUSLIMS IN EAST AFRICA:

- To spread Islam in East Africa

- To trade with the people of East Africa due to high demand of goods such as gold, ivory, etc.

- The good climate of East Africa attracted them.

- Political and religious persecution in Arabia like the busaid Yorubi confilcts.

- The fertile soils in East Africa attracted the Arabs that would support plantation farming.

- The good natural harbors that enabled the anchoring of Arab ships and blew them off.

- The monsoon winds which blew and moved Arab ships and dhows to and from East Africa in the months of April and may, October and November.

- The hospitable people both at the coast and in the interior of east Africa who were not hostile like the Buganda.

- Love for adventure that made many Arabs to come to east Africa.

- The abolition of slave trade in West Africa that forced Arabs to invade east Africa and ended up spreading Islam.

- Presence of fresh drinking waters at the east African coast that attracted the Arabs to come to east Africa.

- The desire to establish an Islamic empire at the coast by the Arabs.

PROBLEMS FACED BY MUSLIM MISSIONARIES IN EAST AFRICA

- Language barrier which made communication difficult

- There was no proper transport

- Attacked by wild animals l;ike lions

- Attacked by hostile tribes like masai, Nandi and others

- Physical barriers were a problem in the movement of Arabs e.g forests, Valleys, etc.

- Tropical diseases like malaria, small pox, sleeping sickness, etc.

- Influence of African Traditional Religion.

- Influence of the coming of Christianity in east Africa.

  Etc.

ACTIVITIES OF MUSLIM MISSIONARIES:

- Preached Islam in East Africa

- Built mosques

- Built koranic schools

- Carried out trade in East Africa

- Introduced slave trade in East Africa

- Introduced Arabic language and culture

- Introduced new architecture

- Carried out plantation farming

- They introduced guns and gun powder

EFFECTS OF ACTIVITES OF MUSLIM MISSIONARIES IN EAST AFRICA:

- Many Africans became Muslims

- Improved on literacy level

- Trade was promoted

- Trading centers and towns sprung up and developed

- Africans adopted Arabic culture

- Arabic language became the official language.

- ➡ Trade led to the introduction of new commodities like glasses, mirrors, beads etc

- ➡ Construction of mosques

- ➡ The trade linked east Africa to the outside world

- ➡ New crops were introduced to the coast and in the interior of east Africa as a result of trade e.g. rice, chapatti, pilao etc.

- ➡ People built flat topped houses using stones

- ➡ Guns caused insecurities at the coast and in the interior of east Africa.

Challenges facing Islam in promoting cohesion in east Africa today

Lack of correct priorities especially in the Muslim NGOs has caused alarm to the governments in power.

Political rivalry, tribalism and clannism among Muslims have variously been cited out in mostly Uganda and Kenya.

Lack of sincerity by some Muslim leaders is one of the hindrances in the spread of Islam and peace full coexistence.

Arrests and imprisonment of Muslim sheikhs, Imams and leaders by the governments in east Africa countries like Uganda.

Death of able Muslim leaders who would have brought Muslim communities together.

Division among the Muslim communities for example old Kampala affiliates and Kibuli affiliates hence unity is hard to attain.

Sectarianism, Muslims are divided into four major schools of thought which are not always compatible.

Lack of education and enough information among the Muslims i.e. they have little knowledge on the teachings of the Quran.

The rise of Islamic extremism and radicalization activities in Mombasa and Nairobi, Kampala.

Financial limitations to facilitate the activities of the Islam in east Africa.

Corruption and embezzlement of funds ment for facilitating peace building activities by Muslim leaders more especially at the local levels.

Lack of qualified man power to run the agenda.

Difficulty in cooperation among Muslim leaders has become a greater hindrance in efforts to undertake the work related to harmonious coexistence.

Low support from the government, this is because governments like that of Kenya and Uganda do not have much trust in Muslims.

Activity.

Discuss the reasons why islam took long to penetrate the interior of east Africa.(old notes)

CHRISTIANITY RELIGION

This was a religion introduced by the European Christian missionaries in the 19th century.

EUROPEAN CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES IN EAST AFRICA.

These were religious groups that came to east Africa from Europe in the 19th century with the major aim of spreading Christianity and civilizing East Africans.

Pioneer Christian missionaries included John Ludwig Kraft who arrived in 1844 and stayed up to 1853. He was a Germany Missionary as well as an explorer.

Johannes Rebmann who arrived in 1846 and stayed up to 1873. He was also a Germany missionary.

Dr David Livingstone from 1856 up to 1873, etc.

MISSIONARY GROUPS IN EAST AFRICA

Table showing missionary groups in east africa

Missionary group	Country	Year	leaders	Areas of influence
Church Missionary Society (CMS)	Britain and Germany	1844 and 1846	Ludwig Kraft and Johannes Rebmann, Alexander Mackey(Britain 1877)	Rabai Mpya, Usambara in Tanganyika, Buganda in Uganda
The White Fathers	France	1879	Fr Laurdel Mapeera, Bro Amansi	Buganda/Uganda,
Mill hill fathers	Britain	1896		Uganda

The Holy Ghost Fathers	France	1860s		Bagamoyo and Zanzibar in Tanzania
London Missionary society	Britain			Lake Tanganyika region (ujiji)
University mission	B	1864	Bishop Tozer	Zanzibar
The united Methodist	Britain			Ribe coast of Kenya
Verona fathers	Italy	1910		Uganda.

REASONS WHY MISSIONARIES CAME TO EAST AFRICA

Missionaries came to East Africa due to political, social and economic reasons

• Missionaries came to E. Africa to spread Christianity.

• They came to stop slave trade which they considered inhuman and had many Africans to suffer.

• They wanted to introduce legitimate trade which was the trading in commodities other than human beings which included coffee, cotton. Etc.

• They came to spread formal and western education i.e. they wanted to teach Africans how to read and write.

• They wanted to bring the western culture and civilize the Africans.

• They also came to Uganda because they were invited by Muteesa 1, the king of Buganda because he was impressed by Stanley's stories about the Europeans and asked them to evangelize his kingdom.

• Some missionaries came to stop the first spreading religion of Islam and replace it with Christianity.

• Some missionaries came to pave way for the colonization of East Africa by stopping slave trade and replacing it with legitimate trade and spreading Christianity which laid a good ground for colonial rule.

• Some missionaries were mainly travelers and explorers who came to explore E. Africa. This included Dr. David Livingstone who was very active in central Africa and talked a lot about Africa which ended up encouraging missionary work in E. Africa hence the coming of missionaries.

• Missionaries in E. Africa came with a motive of trade. They came to trade in areas with plenty of raw materials which were needed by their industries back in Europe.

• They came to identify areas which would provide enough market for finished goods.

• After the revival movement in Europe, there was an urge for evangelization encouraging many missionaries to come to East Africa. They were encouraged to come to east Africa by the different accounts and stories of the early travelers e.g. Stanley.

• They came to settle and rehabilitate the freed slaves.

• The desire for exploration and adventure also made missionaries come e.g. Rebman and Krapft.

• The industrial revolution that led to the discovery of medicine like quinine also encouraged missionaries to come because there was no more fear for diseases e.g. malaria.

PROBLEMS FACED BY MISSIONARIES IN EAST AFRICA.

• Missionaries in E. Africa faced a number of problems in the late 19th and early 20th centuries that were political, economic and social.

• Missionaries faced a problem of language barrier because most Africans did not know English and the interpreters were few.

• They faced a problem of rivalry among the various missionary groups like in Buganda where the Catholics and Protestants were not in good arms hence slowing down their work.

• They were attacked by various tropical diseases which by then had no proper cure e.g. malaria and sleeping sickness which affected their work.

• Some tribes were very hostile like the Masai and Nandi resisted the missionary work.

• They also suffered from inadequate supplies of food and medicine which hindered their effort to reach as many people as possible.

• They also encountered hostility from other religion which could not entertain any foreign religion i.e. African tradition religion and Islam.

• There was also a problem of poor transport facilities which could not enable the missionaries to reach as many areas as possible and in most cases, the porters the missionaries employed usually took off with their properties thus depriving them of their needy supply.

• They were also attacked by wild animals like lions and leopards which greatly reduced their number and slowed down their work.

• Christian practices and teachings in most cases conflicted with those of African traditional e.g. monogamy verses Polygamy.

• Traditional rulers usually saw missionaries as a threat to their political power and as result, some lost their lives e.g. Bishop Hannington.

• Missionary position in East Africa was also threatened by persecution of their new converts' e.g. In Buganda, the pages at the Kabaka's palace were killed.

• There was lack of funds where missionaries lacked sufficient funds to assist them in their work.

• Lack of communication network with their home bases, Missionaries could not easily communication with their home bases in case of problems.

• There was an unfavorable climatic condition, Missionaries suffered due to unfamiliar climate which was hot and humid.

• They were also few in number compared to the vast area they had to evangelize.

• They also faced opposition from slave traders who could not allow them to stop their profitable trade. • Sometime missionaries were mistaken for people with military aid and they were thus forced at times to get involved in the tribal wars in a particular area.

• There was a problem of the thick impenetrable forest.

• Difficult terrain or geographical barriers like rivers, swamps, lake also caused problems to missionaries. • Some missionaries intervened in the political and judicial processes that were beyond their spiritual jurisdiction and competence hence endangering their lives.

• Resistance from land owners who were not happy with the establishment of station schools and churches over their own land

• Lack of literature for their converts to read

• Lack of geographical knowledge about the interior

• General lack of law and order in the interior which created insecurity for them

• Hostility from traditionalists

• Conclusion use political social and economic

REASONS WHY MUTEESA I INVITED MISSIONARIES TO BUGANDA

• Missionaries were ivivited by kabaka mutesa in Buganda the first group to come arrived in 1877 as a result of the kabala's invitation.

• Muteesa had been impressed by Stanley's story about England and therefore wished to interact with the Europeans.

• Muteesa also admired the European technology and military power which he hoped to benefit from through the missionaries.

• Muteesa hoped to get arms or guns from them and therefore strengthen his position.

• Muteesa thought that he would use missionaries against his enemies' e.g. Bunyoro.

• Muteesa also wanted to gain prestige that would come with the coming of the white missionaries.

• Muteesa expected to get goods from the missionaries hence he decided to invite them.

• Muteesa also had internal problems i.e. he faced threats from the traditional religious groups like the Lubaale which opposed his plan of having absolute power over Buganda.

• Muteesa had been threatened by Muslims who placed the Islamic law above the kabaka's law e.g. Muteesa had killed 200 Muslims who had refused to eat meat and food which Muteesa had given them because it had not been prepared by Moslems. Therefore Muteesa hoped to use missionaries with their powerful religion to calm down/ weaken the tradition and Moslem religion.

• Muteesa was also driven by curiosity about the Christian religion and wished his people to be instructed in the same way.

• Muteesa wanted his people to be taught how to read and write.

MISSIONARY ACTIVITIES IN EAST AFRICA

Evangelization Missionaries tried to convert as many people as possible and many were indeed converted into the Christian religion.

• They carried out Linguistic research e.g. Dr Krapf translated the new testament into Kiswahili, wrote a Kiswahili dictionary and grammar book.

• They built churches e.g. university mission to central established a church at Zanzibar, other churches were built at Rubaga, Nsambya and Namirembe.

• Schools were built to teach the Africans how to read and write, many of their converts helped them to spread Christianity like kisubi and Namilyango.

• Early missionaries carried out exploration work like Krapft became the first European to see Mt. Kenya in 1849 and Rebman discovered Mt Kilimanjaro in 1848.

• Missionaries joined the fight against slaves and they set up stations for the freed slave's e.g. in 1868, the Holy Ghost fathers set up a home for the freed slaves in Zanzibar and later Bagamoyo.

• They opened missionary stations e.g. in 1846 Krapft and Rebman set up a mission station at Rabai Mpya near Mombasa.

• They acted as intermediaries between Buganda and the British colonial government like in the negotiations leading to the signing of the 1900 Buganda agreement

• They often involved themselves in the political affairs that were beyond their evangelization work e.g. in Buganda they over threw Mwanga and involved themselves in local wars.

• They also involved in agriculture and carpentry, they equipped their converts with skills in these activities

• Missionaries were also involved in training an efficient class of the African clergy. This greatly helped in spreading the missionary faith.

• They condemned and criticized the bad African cultures like circumcision of women, killing of twins and human sacrifice

• They encouraged the spread of western culture values e.g. eating habits, way of dressing.

• They taught foreign languages to Africans e.g. the London missionary taught English and the Roman Catholics taught French

• They built roads and bridges and improved on transport system which made it easy for people to reach the destination quickly

• They promoted legitimate trade and the growing of cash crop that would be sold to get money for paying taxes.

• They helped in the signing of the agreement like the 1900 Buganda Agreement

• Missionaries identified hospitable and hostile African societies and informed their home government accordingly. This was to enable the colonialists to get the best method for different tribes to rule

• Missionaries built hospitals e.g...........

• They contributed to the final abolition of slave trade which created peace and sanity in East Africa.

• Financed chartered companies e.g. Bishop Tucker gave funds to the IBEACO

• Encouraged new architecture

• Divided Africans along religious lines i.e. people started looking at themselves as catholic, Protestants and not as Baganda Banyoro e.tc.

• Acted as agents of colonial rule

EFFECTS OF MISSIONARIES IN EAST AFRICA

Social Effects

• There was the spreading of Christianity and many people were converted to catholism and Protestantism e.g. in 1911, there were about 280 converts in Buganda.

• Many churches were built in East Africa e.g. in Uganda Rubaga, Namirembe catherdial were built by missionaries.

• Formal Education was introduced where many people learnt how to read and write, many schools were built such as Namilyango College in 1906, Gayaza High school in 1905, Kings College Buddo in 1906 and kisubi in 1906

• Technical and professional schools were also introduced and people learnt skills like carpentry, brick laying and agriculture .Schools for these subjects were also setup e.g. St. Joseph Technical institute, kisubi and others were set up in Iganga, Soroti etc.

• They built hospitals and provided better health services e.g. Rubaga by the white fathers, Mengo by CMS. Nsambya by the mill hill father's e.tc and as a result the death rates reduced.

• They promoted the translation of European literature into local languages e.g. Krapft translated the New Testament in Swahili language and even wrote the Swahili dictionary, Alexander Mackey translated the bible into Luanda and also set up the first printing press

• Through Education, Missionaries created group the educated /elite class who acted as clerks, translator messengers for the colonialists' e.g.

• New languages were introduced in East Africa e.g. English, Germany and French that eased communication

• Missionaries also improved the standards of living by providing better hygiene, diet and employment.

- On the other hand, Missionaries and other Christian teaching undermined the traditional cultures e.g. in marriage, they emphasized monogamy, and they were also against circumcision of women and killing of twins.

- Missionaries led to the death of Christian converts e.g. In Buganda, 30 young pages were put to death because of their faith that had made them disobey kabaka Mwanga.

- Christian Missionaries divided people into groups e.g. in Buganda people were divided into the Protestants and Catholics.

- They also introduced new styles of dressing, dancing and eating based on western culture, Marriage and burial were conducted in a religious way which eroded African culture.

POLITICAL EFFECTS

- Missionaries to some extend reduced inter-tribal wars and conflicts since Christianity encouraged people to love one another and not to kill.

- However in Buganda, Missionaries led to political and religious conflicts e.g. between 1888 and 1892, the Protestants and Catholics converts were fighting for political power in Buganda.

- Missionaries also engaged in politics of some societies i.e. Buganda they helped in the over throw of kalema/ Mwanga and increased the religious wars.

- Many people who were educated in East Africa by missionaries became collaborators with the colonialists like Semei Kankugulu and Apollo Kaggwa.

- Christian teaching also softened the hearts and minds of Africans people, undermining their resistance against the colonialists.

- Division brought by Christianity contributed to the delay in the attainment of independence by the Africans because the struggle was based on religious factions e.g. in Buganda those who belong protestant, catholic and traditional faith were supporting their own leaders.

- Missionary Education produced the first pioneer nationalist e.g. Dr. Milton Obote, I.K Musaazi, Julius Nyerere, Tom Mboya, Mzee Jomo Kenyatta. All those attended missionary schools but played a major role in the struggle for independence.

ECONOMIC EFFECTS

- Missionaries played a great role in trying to stop slave trade and slavery in East Africa. Homes of freed slaves were set up in Mombasa and Rabai where they were taught skills like carpentry, brick laying in order to start new lives.

- They encouraged legitimate trade that's trade in other commodities other than human beings.

• They introduced cash crops like coffee, cotton, sisal, and pyrethrum. Kenneth Borup of the church missionary society e.g. introduced cotton and distributed cotton seeds to farmers in Bunyoro, Buganda and Ankole. Thus improving on the agricultural sector.

• They introduced new and better methods of farming e.g. use of fertilizers and crop rotation which led to increased yields. They are therefore responsible for the plantation agriculture and crop economy that we still have today.

• They opened up mission stations that later developed into towns like Rabai, Bagamoyo, Tabora etc. All these were rural areas before their coming.

• The missionaries also created employment opportunities for Africans like many of their converts were trained in different skills such as teaching, nursing and interpreters.

• They also contributed to the development of the infrastructure like some transport systems were set up like roads, bridges to help missionaries evangelize Africans.

ATIVITY:

1. Carry out research on the role of the following religions in the development of east Africa.
a) Islam
b) Christianity.
2. **Problems faced by foreign religions in East Africa**
   - Lack of true converts
   - Confusion in preaching of many Christian churches
   - Lack of enough funds to support church activities
   - Negative Influence of social media
   - Rise of many Christian sects
   - Lack of training of some church leaders
   - Outbreak of pandemics e.g COVID19
   - Homosexuality
   - Death of able church leaders due to diseases like HIV
   - Competition among denominations
   - Frequent migrations of the members
   - Corruption among church leaders
   - Poverty among churches
   - Rise of false preachers
   - Land grabbing
   - Poor infrastructures like roads
   - Political instabilities
   - Family breakdown eg
   - Segregation and discrimination

etc

WHY MISSIONARY WORK SUCCEEDED IN EAST AFRICA

• Despite the many problems that the missionaries faced in East Africa, their work was generally successful because following internal and external reasons

• Missionaries received assistance and cooperation from the local ruler's e.g. Muteesa 1 of Buganda who provided shelter for the missionaries and encouraged people to come and listen to their preaching.

• They also received help from their home government like the chartered companies always supported their missionaries' e.g. the IBEACO which supported the CMS during wars in Buganda while the GEACO supported the Berlin three missionaries in Tanganyika.

• Their movement was slightly eased by the already caravan routes in the interior i.e. the early missionary used the long distance route in East Africa especially the central route.

• Missionaries were committed to their work e.g. Dr.David Livingstone despite his poor health refused to leave East Africa and Rebmann did not stop work until he became blind.

• The converts were also committed supportive and this helped missionaries to spread the gospel e.g. the white fathers left Uganda in 1882 but their converts continued to preach and baptize others.

• The personality of Jesus Christ attracted many people to learn more about it leading to the success of the missionary work.

• Some Africans were impressed by the missionary skills which they compared to Jesus healing activity thus drawing them a nearer to the substance leading to the success of their work.

• Many Africans especially the young pages were attracted by the books written by missionaries and became the first convert thus leading to the success of missionary work.

• The Christian teaching promoted equality among human dignity and this appeared that many Africans who took up Christianity therefore making the missionaries work a success

KILLING CONVERTS AT NAMUGONGO

About 45 Christians converts and 70 Muslim converts were killed on the orders of Kabaka Mwanga on 3rd June in 1886. Every 3rd June is a public holiday in Uganda in memory of these martyrs.

REASONS FOR KILLING CHRISTIAN & MUSLIM CONVERTS:

- Religious struggle for political influence led to killing of the converts.

- They disobeyed Kabaka Mwanga.

- Converts refused to abandon their faith in Christianity and Islam.

- The growing influence of Christianity alarmed the Kabaka Mwanga

- Coming of foreign religions in Buganda kingdom.

- The conflicts between the different religions.

- Youthful Kabaka Mwanga failed to address the issues of foreign religions.

- Muslim converts refused to eat meat prepared by the royal butchers.

- The traditionalists influenced Kabaka Mwanga to kill them forexample katikiro Mukasa.

- Some converted subjects had started challenging the kabaka openly about his life style

- Rise Muslim fundamentalism who criticized the kabaka's un-Islamic conducts by calling him Kaffir (non believer).

- Some Muslims had started going for circumcision secretly which annoyed the kabaka

- The growing influence of Muslims in the political affairs of the kingdom that scared the kabaka

- Increasing number of Christian pages

- Refusal of Christian pages to give up on their faith

- The unskilled young kabaka Mwanga with a weak character.

EFFECTS OF THE KILLING OF CHRISTIANS & MUSLIM CONVERTS IN UGANDA

- Led to the religious wars in Buganda

- Political insecurity in the area

- 3rd June is a now a public holiday in memory of the martyrs

- Millions of pilgrims from all over the world flock to Namugongo

- Promoted tourism industry

- Led to an increased spread of Christianity in Uganda

- Led to an increased spread of Islam in Uganda

- Led to death of people more especially the Uganda martyrs.

- Led to the establishement of the Uganda martyrs shrine in Namugongo.

➥ ETC

GROUP TASK

In groups, basing on what you have learnt, textbooks and ICT, discuss and answer the following questions:

➥ Explain the importance of 3rd June, Martyrs Day in Uganda.

➥ Identify the challenges faced on this day.

➥ Suggest solutions to these problems.

TOPIC 07 .LOCAL AND EXTERNAL TRADE CONTACTS IN EAST AFRICA BEFORE 1880

Key words

Barter trade

Exchange

Coastal merchants

Middlemen

Monsoon winds

Slavery

Slave Trade

Long Distance Trade

Pre-colonial Trade

LEARNING OUTCOMES

a) By the end of this topic, the learners should be able to:
b) Understand the trade contacts that existed in east Africa before colonial time.
c) Understand the precolonial trade systems in east Africa that began before 1800
d) Understand the organization of Indian ocean trade in EA
e) Know the relationship between Indian ocean trade and slave trade
f) Know the organization of slave trade and slavery
g) Understand the organization of slave trade and its impact in east Africa
h) Know the impact of abolition of slave trade.

Trade

Trade is the buying and selling of goods and services. Trade started because of the inability of man to produce everything that he needed. Therefore trade is as old as mankind.

Barter Trade

This is the trade which involves exchange of goods for goods, services for services using the double coincidence of wants. For example goat for a cow, dove for a hen etc.

Advantages of Barter Trade

- The system is simple to use i.e. not complex
- Natural resources will not be exploited
- There won't be problems of balance of payments crisis
- It allows individuals to trade items that they own.
- etc.

Disadvantages of Barter Trade

- Double coincidence of wants, if a person wants to acquire salt in exchange for bark cloth, he or she has to find a person wants bark cloth for salt.
- Absence of common measure value, problems could arise on how much a commodity could be exchanged for.
- Lack of divisibility, problems could arise when a big indivisible commodity was to exchange for a smaller commodity.
- Problem of transportation, commodities could not be transported conveniently from one place to another.

Commercial Trade/ Monetary Trade

This involves the exchange of goods and services using money as the only medium of exchange.

During the pre-colonial times, the commonly used currency Cowrie shells, Gold coins and Rupees.

TRADE CONTACTS THAT EXISTED IN EAST AFRICA BEFORE COLONIAL TIMES/ DURING THE PRE-COLONIAL TIMES

LOCAL TRADE

This was the type of trade that involved exchange of good with members of the same community.

The main items of this trade were localized goods that is to say goods that produced with in the locality of the people for example agricultural products, bark cloth, salt.

The medium of exchange for this trade was barter.

The trade was conducted in the small markets within the locality.

The trade enabled people acquire what they did not have.

INTER-COMMUNITY /REGIONAL TRADE

This was the trade that involved exchange of goods and services between or among various communities for example Buganda Busoga, Bunyoro, Acholi Lango etc.

The communities used barter trade.

This trade enabled communities to get what they did not have.

It also strengthened the relationship between the communities.

Trade items produced by the various communities during local and inter-community trades.

Buganda	Agricultural products like Iron implements like Bark cloth
Bunyoro	Salt Cattle products like Agricultural products like
Ankole	Cattle products like Pottery products
Busoga	Agricultural products like grains, crops etc.
Acholi	Agriculture products
Toro	Agricultural products

EXTERNAL TRADE DURING THE PRE-COLONIAL TIMES

1. INDIAN OCEAN TRADE /COASTAL TRADE/ TRANS-INDIAN OCEAN TRADE

Indian Ocean trade was the commercial transaction between the East African coast and the Arab world or the people of the middle East/Orient and the Far East especially Persia and Saudi Arabia and others.

It was called the Indian Ocean trade because it was conducted across the Indian Ocean.

Other major participants in this trade were the Greeks, Egyptians, Indonesians, Syrians Chinese and Indians.

The trade was conducted mainly through the Indian Ocean and also through the red sea and Mediterranean Sea.

The goods that were involved in this trade were slaves, ivory, gold and others from the coast and spices, daggers, silk, guns, gun power, bead and other from the Middle /Far East.

This trade flourished between 1000-1500AD and was responsible for the development of the Swahili culture along the coast.

ORGANISATION OF THE INDIAN OCEAN TRADE (MAIN FEATURES)

- The organization of the trade included; People involved, medium of communication, means of transport, mode of exchange, goods, and others.
- This was a trade between the coastal people of East Africa (Bantu) and the Arabs especially from Persia and Saudi Arabia.
- Other participants came from Egypt, Greece, Indonesia, Syria, Malaysia, china, India and others.
- The trade was conducted out on barter trade basis. This means that goods could be exchanged with fellow goods using the double coincidence of wants.
- After some times, cowries shells were used as currency that was got from Maldives island.
- Gold coins were later used when towns like kilwa started minting their own coins
- The trade was carried out by use of dhows which brought the goods from the Middle / Far East. The dhows were by the monsoon wind
- The dhows would be blown by the monsoon wind i.e. the southwest winds would blow the dhows to the coast between November and April and the northeastern winds would blow the dhows back to Asia in May and October.
- Major exports of the trade included ivory, slaves, animal skins, copper gold, tortoise shells, rhino horns and others.
- While major imports to East Africa included spices, beads, guns, clothes, glass and others.
- The Arabs were the chief entrepreneurs, they could provide capital in the trade and were the main organizers.
- The Bantu tribes controlled the trade between the interior and the coast while the coastal people took over as middlemen at the coast.
- African chiefs could help in the organization of the trade and controlling centres i.e. organized good slaves would carry to market centres provided security and others.
- Most of the trade items were got from the interior of east Africa and were mainly exported through the Indian Ocean and to a smaller extent the red sea and the Mediterranean Sea.
- Ivory was exported to china for bangles, bracelets, ornaments and others.
- Slaves to the Middle East as domestic servants, soldiers and miners
- The coastal people exchanged goods with the interior people like the makaranga of mwenomotapa kingdom in Zimbabwe.
- The coastal people used slaves as the main means of transport Goods from the interior of east Africa for example gold from mwenomotapa would be carried by slaves or middlemen mostly the makaranga to the coast.
- Gold was mined in mwenomotapa kingdom by the makaranga.
- Kilwa and sofala were the major gold centres and they acted as collecting centres.
- Ivory was obtained from the interior and sold at the coast in town like sofala Malindi and Mombasa.
- Ivory was exported to china for bangles, bracelets, ornaments and others.
- Slaves were obtained through raids and were sold at the coast at in towns like sofala kilwa Malindi and Mombasa.

- They were taken to the Middle East mainly as domestic workers, servants, soldiers and miners.
- The controllers of the trade gained a lot of wealth as the trade increased and as a result some towns at the coast developed in to prosperous trading centres such as kilwa Mombasa Malindi sofala and Mogadishu.
- Foreigners didn't enter the interior because of fear of hostile tribes, wild animals, diseases harsh climate and others.
- It was only later due to increase in trade that the Arab traders started penetrating in to the interior though these were very few by that time.
- The medium of communication was at first gestures and later Kiswahili was used anew language that had developed with the Swahili culture. Many people mastered the language in order to gain from the trade.
- The most important port of trade included Yemen, Oman, Hormuz and Hadramount.
- Initially it was a silent kind of trade but with time the trade developed and some Arabs decided to settle permanently at the coast.

Trade items of Indian Ocean Trade

Trade items from the coast	Trade items from the Middle East
Slave Ivory Gold Backcloth Etc	Guns Gun powder Beads Mirrors Etc

INTERNAL TRADE

The main items of trade were;

GOLD

Gold in east Africa was collected from kilwa but got from the interior of east Africa in Mwenomotapa kingdom of Zimbabwe.

Gold was mined secretly because it was under the chiefs, though the Arabs were interested in gold, they didn't go to the interior because they feared disease, wild animals, hostile tribes and others

Gold was mined by the makaranga who lived in mwenomotapa kingdom and carried through Tete to Lake Malawi and then to kilwa where it could be exported.

Both kilwa and sofala were heavy trading centres for gold but by 1300, kilwa was the most important.

Gold from East Africa was taken to India, Arabia Persia and Far East .some historians believe that east African gold at times would be taken to Europe.

It is also believed that the first coins were made out of East African gold.

Gold brought prosperity to the coast.

IVORY

Ivory was another major item of the coastal trade. Every town at the coast traded in ivory that was got from elephant tusk.

However the flow of ivory of the coast wasn't constant because of; bad weather, poor living conditions in the interior, lack of skilled hunters, poor weapons used in hunting and others.

Ivory was exported to India and used for making ornaments like bangles, necklace, and rings.

In china, ivory was used for making beautiful decorations in churches and rich homes.

SLAVES

Moslems used slaves in their home and on their land, other slaves were sent India and china.

In Europe, most peasants were slaves to their master and slaves were used on plantations mainly. Even in Africa many societies kept slaves who were either their people or those captured during war.

As early as 1000ad very many slaves had been shifted from Africa to India, Persia and china.

At the east African coast Arabs were the main dealers and they derived a lot of slaves through raiding

How were slaves acquired in the interior?

Hint: show the organization of slave trade in East Africa.

Effects / **Results/ Impacts/ Outcome of Indian Ocean Trade**

The effects were political, social and economic positive and negative in nature.

Economic effects

- Economically, most of the coastal merchants who participated in the trade became rich and wealthy.
- New goods were introduced at the E.A coast e.g.
- Many coastal trading centers developed in to large and prosperous towns e.g.
- New crops were introduced at the coast like
- Local industries like cloth weaving, iron smelting, ship building and other declined along the coast of east Africa.
- Some town started minting their gold coins to show independence e.g. kilwa and sofala.

- Indian Ocean trade led to introduction of cowrie shells as the main mode of exchange.
- Navigational skills were also learnt by the coastal people since most of the economic activities were carried out on Indian Ocean.
- The east African coast was linked to the outside world especially commercially and this later attracted Europeans like Portuguese who conquered the coast in 1500.

Social effects

- There was population increased at the east African coast due to the coming of the Arabs and other traders.
- The trade led to introduction of new architecture at the coast e.g.
- The standard of living improved at the coast due to the prosperous trade i.e.
- The trade led to intermarriages between the Arabs and the coastal Bantu which led to the development of Swahili people or race.
- This was followed by the development of the Kiswahili language which was a mixture of Bantu and Arabic words.
- There was loss of culture and detribalization at the coast
- The trade promoted the settlement of Arabs and other foreigners at the east African coast.
- The trade led to Arab way of dressing at the coast e.g.
- More than 37 towns sprung at the east African coast and some of them included
- Koranic schools were also set up at the coast and as well as mosques to cater for the Arab traders and their children.
- As a result of trade Arabic language became the official language at the coast and it was used in administration, courts schools mosques.
- Kiswahili language remained as the national language lingua-franca that was used in the day to day activities at the coast.
- The people at the coast started applying the Muslim law known as sharia law. This was a law according to the Koran and was used in the day to day administration of the coast.
- The trade led to depopulation at the coast due to slave trade i.e. many people were taken as slave from the coast.
- New Food etiquettes were introduced at the coast e.g.

Political effects

- Indian Ocean trade le to conflicts between coastal towns over the control of the trade for example kilwa and Sofala
- The administration of the coast laid in the hands of the foreigners Arabs leading to loss of independence.
- The trade made the coast to have independent rulers who were Arabs with the tittle of sultans.
- The trade led to the introduction of Amir and Wasiz who were in charge of the daily administration of people at the coast.

Conclusion;

CHALLENGES FACED DURING INDIAN OCEAN TRADE

- Language problems
- Transport (seasonal monsoon wind
- Scarcity of some trade items
- Man eaters waziambas and segejues
- Raids by the slave dealers
- Limited capital by the Arabs
- Coming of the Portuguese
- Divisibility more especially before Cowrie shells and gold coins were introduced
- Conflicts between some Coastal settlements e.g. between Kilwa and Sofala.
- Lack of specialization

> **Task: Explain the relationship between Indian Ocean and long-distance trade.**
> **Relationship between Indian Ocean Trade and slavery in East Africa**

- Arabs used slaves in their homes
- Slaves were used to carry the trade items.

NOTE: make research and add on more relationships

EAST AFRICAN LONG DISTANCE TRADE

This was a trade carried out between the coastal people (Arabs and Swahili people)and the interior people of East Africa.

This trade became prominent in East Africa in 1840s or around the first half of the19[th] century when Arabs started going into the interior to look for commodities.

Therefore, Long Distance Trade was a trade carried out over long distances and thus the name Long Distance Trade. The Traders used to move caravans thus thename caravan trade.

It was carried out before the establishment of colonial rule in East Africa and that'swhy it's sometimes called the pre-colonial

The main participants of this trade included the Arab and Swahili traders from thecoast and Nyamwezi, Akamba, Kikuyu, Bunyoro, Buganda, Yao etc. from the interior.

Each of these societies had unique qualities that were necessary for the prosperityof Long-Distance Trade.

Some prominent personalities of this trade included Mirambo, Nyungu ya Mawe,Fundikira Muteesa kabalega, muzilikazi, kivol, tippu tip etc.

The trade involved many regions countries and areas of East Africa, tan, Kenyaand Uganda and went to as far as present-day Rwanda Burundi DRC, and SouthSudan.

WHY THE LONG DISTANCE TRADE DEVELOPED

Internal and external factors

- Availability of commodities: the trade developed because commodities were available both in the interior and at the coast e.g. ivory slave etc. and gun, spicesetc. respectively.

- Increased demand for commodities; there was increased demand for East African commodities e.g. slaves, ivory etc. hence leading to the development of the trade.

- The people of East Africa had also developed a liking for foreign good e.g. guns……..

- Some societies of East Africa were also willing to trade e.g. nyamwezi, akamba, buganda etc which played a big in the trade.

- The interior African rulers also encouraged their people to participate in the tradewhich led to its development e.g. Mirambo, Muteesa, kivoi etc.

- Some African tribes joined the trade because it was profitable and therefore it developed on a large scale e.g ivory and slaves were highly demanded at the coast.

- The existence and willingness of the nyamwezi potters also contributed to the development of Long Distance Trade, they helped in carrying commodities to andfrom the East African coast.

- Division of labour by different East African societies also led to the developmentof Long Distance Trade in that women did most of the domestic work enabling men to carry out Trade.

- The abolition of slave trade in West Africa made Traders to come to East Africa tolook for slaves therefore leading to increased slave trade thus development of LongDistance Trade.

- In East Africa slavery was not new therefore it was easy for people to adopt slavetrade.

- The transfer of seyyid said's capital from Muscat to Zanzibar in 1840s increased the level of trade since he encouraged Arabs to go into the interior, seyyid said alsoset up plantations that needed slave labour therefore increasing on the level of trade.

- Seyyid said also invited the Indian banyans who came to the coast and rent money to the Traders therefore increasing on the volume of trade.

- When seyyid opened up a slave market in Zanzibar, there was increased demand and supply of slaves therefore leading to increased slave trade and thus the development of Long Distance Trade.

- The Arabs also wanted slaves to work for them on their plantations and home which also increased the volume of trade.

- There was also increased demand for slaves to work on sugarcane plantations, mines and others to work in America and West Indies besides, that the French also needed slaves to work on their plantations on the island of Madagascar, Seychelles and Mauritius.

- The development of transport sector also contributed to increased trade i.e. the potters and donkeys made transport very easy in that they would carry commodities from and to da coast.

- The opening up of trade routes in the interior enabled Traders to reach all corners of East Africa societies and collected and as well as transported good.

- The double coincidence of wants whereby people easily found those who needed what they had and had what they needed.

- The nature of land also facilitated the development of Long Distance Trade e.g. the nyamwezi land was very flat which enabled people to easily move up and down looking for trade items.

- The introduction of Kiswahili language in the interior as a business language made communication easier since majority people could understand and talk Kiswahili.

- Introduction of cowrie shells eased transaction of business and later the use of gold coins which led to the development of the trade.

- Introduction of gun improved on the security of the Traders in the interior which also contributed to the development of long distance trade.

- The cooperation between the coastal and interior people also helped to developedthe trade since Trade transaction were carried out peacefully and information wasprovided about goods that were needed.

- The exhaustion of the Trade items at the coast and immediate interior resulted intolong journeys in search for goods in the interior hence the development of long distance trade.

- Some societies in the interior had skills that enabled them to produce superior goodmore over some of the trade items had unlimited market as they were highly

- demanded e.g. the Akamba were skilled………

- The presence and influence of lslam fostered unity and brought trustworthy amongthe Traders.

- The good and favourable climate enabled the Traders to carry out constant tradeduring the dry season and carry out agriculture during the wet season.

- Some tribe were strategically located enabling them to easily participate in theTrade e.g. nyamwezi, buganda on the Central.

- The hospitality to the coastal Traders by the interior people and their chiefsencouraged them to enter into the interior.

- At the same time, some societies had peace, stability and security which all favoured the trade activities. E.g.

Organization of Long Distance Trade/ Main Features of Long Distance Trade

- People involved: the main people involved in this included the coast people i.e. theArabs and Swahili people and the interior people, some of the most prominent societies………….

- The interior communities played important roles like providing security, preparingand organizing trade items, controlling trade routes etc.

- In some cases foreigners Arabs and Swahili people joined the Africans in theinterior to search for trade items especially slaves.

- The Traders who remained at the coast had a duty of organising , shipping andexporting the trade items overseas especially to Europe.

- Commodities: the main commodities from the interior (exports) were………………………………

- The main commodities from the coast (imports) were………………………………………………….

- The chiefs organized the collection of commodities from their different societiesand took them to the different centres.

- Mode of exchange: the main mode of exchange was through barter, later however cowrie shells, gold coins and Rupees were introduced as the main mode of exchange and the Indian banyans were the main controllers of the trade financially.

- The coastal Traders were financed by the banyans who charged them less intereststhat enabled them to have permanent settlements in the interior and started supplying goods using improved means of transport like donkeys

- Medium of communication: the medium of communication was at first sign or gestures but later Kiswahili was adopted as the major medium of communicationand where problems arouse interpreters were used.

- Mean of transport: transport was by means of human being or porterage , this wasmainly done by the Nyamwezi who produced the most experienced potters.

- Later improved means like donkeys were introduced and used by the coastal Traders.

- Journeys: usually journeys to and from the coast were made during the dry seasondue to the fact that the path were impassable in the rainy season.

- The Traders stayed at the coast up to period of 3 months and during that period they even planted some annual crops that would grow before they resumed theirjourneys in the dry season.

- It usually took months or even years to gather the different commodities from thedifferent societies in the interior and take them to the coast.

- Caravans; Traders from the interior moved in caravans which consisted of 100-1000 people. Caravan included slaves, gun men, Potter, Traders medicine men cookies tent men for security reasons the caravans were armed.

- Usually Long Distance Traders carried out negotiations with the local leaders toallow their caravans free passage in the territories in exchange for taxes which were paid e.g. they negotiated with Mirambo of nyamwezi, Muteesa f buganda,kivoi of Akamba, Kirabo of Chagga.

- Arabs and Swahili Traders eventually acquired a number of agents and with timethe number of trading centers or bases and ports developed in the interior e.g.
- Tabora, makaou urambo and ports like ujiji.

- These bases or towns acted as collecting centres and as well as refreshing centersfor the Traders, the bases had storage facilities for the goods and services.

- At the coast the main centres/ bases were Zanzibar and Bagamoya.

- Route used: Long Distance Trade had three main routes namely Southern route,Central route and Southern route.

- Southern Route this route ran from the southern parts of kilwa and Lindi and wentto the areas occupied by the making, Yao and others.

- This was a chief slave route dominated by the Yao who were prominent slavetraders.

- Central Route: this route started from opposite Zanzibar (Bagamoya) and wentinto the interior towards the Nyamwezi society where the Arabs and Swahili Traders possessed an important trading center at Tabora.

- In unyanyembe (Nyamwezi) the route divided into three I.e. the North-west routegoing towards Karagwe, buganda and bunyoro.

- The Western route towards ujiji and kasongo and went to as far as Congo

  And South- west to kazembe, sukuma uzimba and katanga.

- This route carried both slaves and ivory and was dominated by the nyamwezi whogot a reputation of carrying heavy goods.

- Northern route the route started from pangani and west towards Kilimanjaro and Taita hills where it split into two i.e. the Western route moving towards the shores of Lake Victoria and North- west route moving towards Mt.kenya to Lake Turkanato as far as the slopes not Mt. Elgon.

- The main commodity at first was ivory but later slaves were also supplied on thisroute.

- There was another route used by the Arabs Traders commonly known as khartoumers. These route started from khartourm with some Traders coming fromas far as Cairo in Egypt

- The Traders entered Uganda through the Northern region and moved followingRiver Nile into Alur Acholi, lango, bunyoro to as far as busoga.

- These trade route mainly carried goods like ivory, slaves cattle products grains andwas mainly dominated by the khartoumers.

- In conclusion long distance trade involved movement of Traders with their goodsto and from the East African coast.

A sketch map showing the routes used during Long Distance Trade in the 19thcentury

A SKETCH MAP OF EAST AFRICA SHOWING THE LONG DISTANCE TRADE ROUTES (organization) please skip one page for the map (*get the map from history and political education fountain page 123)*

GOODS/ITEMS SUPPLIED/ TRADED IN DURING LONG DISTANCE TRADE

Interiorcommodities/ goods/trade items (African goods) exports	Coastal commodities (Arabs - Swahili goods) imports

Factors that led to growth and expansion of trade in your society

Organization of trade in your locality

How is long distance trade related to trade in your locality/ in your society?
- In both trades people are able to get what they cannot produce
- Both trades provide revenue to the governments
- Wealth was /is accumulated in both

Why do traders move long distances today

Contribution of trade to the development of Uganda
- Foreign exchange
- Employment
- Revenue
- Development of infrastructures
- Strengthen ties between Uganda and other countries like china
- Enable Uganda acquire what she can't produce
  Give more points

EFFECTS OF LONG DISTANCE TRADE

The effects of the long distance trade were many and were social, economic and political.

Political Effects;
- The trade led to strengthening of large and powerful states especially those that had acquire guns at the expense of small states e.g. Buganda verse their neighbors like Bunyoro.

- Guns found their way in the interior of East Africa and thus became a key to both power and wealth. Therefore, those with access to guns were able to dominate those without them e.g.…………….
- The increase of guns in the interior intensified (increased) inter- tribal wars and raids therefore disturbing the inter-tribal peace that had existed.
- The trade led to devastation and destruction of property and crops as a result of wars and raids for slaves.
- The trade led to the emergence of powerful traders and leaders who built commercial and military states from trade benefits e.g. Mirambo of Unyanyembe, Tippu-Tip and Nyungu Ya Mawe. Thus, the trade led to a move towards larger political units.
- Many Africans due to slave trade lost confidence in their leaders because they could not protect them against slave raids and some even sold them as slaves.
- Some rulers expanded their territories in order to gain control of trade routes, market places and places of production e.g. Kabalega expanded southwards to L. Katwe to control the salt deposits there.
- The prosperous trade attracted Arabs to go to the interior and hence ended up interfering in the political affairs of the people e.g. in Buganda.
- The trade led to the death of people who would have been leaders and empire builders and thus the political development of E. Africa was disturbed.

Economic effects;

- The people who participated in the trade became very rich i.e. Arabs and African leaders in the interior like Mirambo, Muteesa I.
- Zanzibar became the most active slave trading market at the E. African Coast.
- Several new commodities were introduced into the interior e.g. guns, cloth, beads, glass etc.
- Agriculture was less attended to especially in the slave trade and a result, famine and starvation became wild spread.
- New crops were introduced in E. Africa like rice, millet, maize, wheat bananas, green peppers etc.
- There was introduction of cowrie shells and coins to be used as a means of exchange in the interior of East Africa
- There was development of international trade and E. Africa entered the money economy. This was mainly because of the link between E. Africa and the outside world which was strengthened.
- The Arabs and Swahili investors established plantations around trading settlement in the interior e.g. at Tabora, Ujiji.
- There was development and growth of trading centers and towns inland and along trade routes e.g. Tabora, Ujiji etc.
- The caravan routes were later used to guide early Europeans and missionaries to E. Africa.

- The caravan routes later developed into proper communication lines like railway lines e.g. Uganda railway and the Tan-Zam railway these were built following the former trade routes.
- The increase in demand for ivory led to the decline in the number of elephants in E. Africa.
- Some of the old craft manship and skills suffered a great decline due to the importation of manufactured goods from overseas as a result, local artisans were taken away.
- The trade offered an alternative livelihood to some people like the Akamba whose activities were affected by drought and poor soils.

Social effect;

- Societies in East Africa which participated in the trade like Yao, Kamba, Nyamwezi and the Chagga came into contact with the coastal traders and copied from them new ideas of trade, administration and building.
- There was introduction of Arab architecture and design in land or in the interior.
- There was spread of Islam and Swahili culture and language in the interior of E. Africa especially among those who participated in the trade.
- The prosperous trade led to an increase in foreigners in E. Africa which contributed to general European interest in E. Africa and scramble and partition of E. Africa.
- There was inter-marriage between the local people and the Arabs thus strengthening to the Swahili race.
- There was spread of Kiswahili language through much of E. Africa especially along the trade routes.
- Arab religion and culture was introduced in the interior e.g. way of dressing, eating habits.
- There was detribalization and de-culturalisation due to increased wars and raids for slaves.
- There was depopulation due to slave trade and its activities where by very many people were taken as slaves while others were killed and some forced to migrate.
- The trade led to the emergence of social misfits like the Ruga-ruga and Maviti who caused a lot of havoc and untold suffering to the people.
- The desire to stop slave trade and re-settle the freed slaves led to the coming of European eventually leading to the colonization of east Africa.
- Because of the Arab penetration into the interior, many African tribes like Nyamwezi, Kamba, and others lost their middlemen position to the Arabs who wanted to deal directly with the interior tribes. This was an economic blow to those societies.
- With the decline of long distance trade, societies like Nyamwezi, Yao and others that solely depended on the trade as the source of livelihood found it hard to adopt a new life

N.B. please separate positive effects from the negative effects.

DECLINE OF LONG DISTANCE TRADE/FACTORS/REASONS FOR THE DECLINE

The trade in East Africa declined toward the end of the 19th century and this was due to internal and external factors

- The death of prominent leaders like Mirambo, Nyungu Ya Mawe and Muteesa 1 in 1884, these had been great organizers on top of exposing their people to trade opportunities with the coastal traders.
- Scarcity and exhaustion of some trade items made the trade collapse for example ivory became scare after most of all the elephants had been hunted down.
- The industrial revolution in Europe made the acquisition of slave useless since machines had replaced human labour. This meant that slaves a major item of the trade had lost market.
- The coming of Christian missionaries and their persistent anti-slavery campaign made the trade collapse.
- The abolition of slave trade left the traders with no other item worth investing in.
- The colonization of East Africa finally ended slave trade since one of the reasons for European occupation of East Africa was to end this trade.
- The construction of the Uganda railway line made slaves useless as they were no longer needed for transportation of goods.
- The insecurity and chaos created by the Ruga-ruga and Maviti bandits scared traders from entering into the interior.
- The introduction of legitimate trade i.e. trade in products like coffee and cotton provided an alternative to slave trade.
- The introduction and acquisition of guns by the majority of the interior tribes enabled them to organize and defend themselves against slave traders.
- The competition among trading communities because they all produced the same commodities gradually killed the trade e.g. the Kamba, Nyamwezi and the Yao all produced slaves hence leading to lack of market.
- The inter-tribal wars in the interior diverted people's attention from trade and made the interior insecure for incoming traders.
- Some societies prevented others from participating in the trade e.g. the Nyika couldn't allow the Kamba to pass through their territory and the Baganda didn't allow the Banyoro to participate in the trade.
- The heavy taxes imposed on the coastal merchants by the interior chiefs also prove a problem e.g. Nyungu Ya Mawe heavily taxed the Arabs making the trade almost unprofitable.
- The Ngoni invasion also disrupted the trade and made it collapse especially along the Ujiji-Tabora route.
- Hostile tribes like the Masai also made trade difficult because they always attacked the traders who tried to operate in their area.
- Tropical diseases like malaria, sleeping sickness also claimed the lives of many trades and the slaves who were needed to carry goods to the coast.

- Wild animals like lions used to attack the traders along the way to the coast.
- The Indian banyans (money lenders) who had confined themselves at the coast lost their money because the traders they lent money were either killed in the interior or refused to pay back.
- Arabs interfered in the political affairs of some tribes forcing chiefs to turn against them e.g. Mwana sole a Nyamwezi chief turned against them and fought them for five years.

SLAVE TRADE

Slave trade was the buying and selling of human beings as commodities / trading of human beings. In east Africa, slave trade became prominent when traders from the Middle East started trading with the coastal people in 1000ad.

A slave is a person who is a property of another.

Slavery is/was the **absolute possession** of a human being by another. Or was **a situation** where one person owns another as property.

It is important to note that among East African societies, slavery was common and was practiced by the traditional leader who used slave as ………. ……….. For example among the Yao, Baganda, ETC.

Slaves from east Africa were taken to the Middle East to work as samber boys, security guards……….etc.

By the 17th century, it was estimated that about 10,000 slaves were sold per year to the Middle East.

East African slaves were also taken to Europe and America

Activity 2 (**answer these questions in your books**)

a) Why were slaves taken to America?
b) Identify the challenges they encountered in America.
c) Identity one common question song about slave trade in America (**write it**)

Reasons for the development of slave trade/ why slave trade in East Africa expanded in the mid-19th Century.

- Slave trade was the commercial transaction of buying/ selling human beings whereas slave trade was a new thing in East Africa, slavery existed before among the African societies.
- Slavery had existed in East Africa since time immemorial. Many African chiefs and other influential people domesticated slaves.
- However, with the coming of the Arabs and Persians from the Middle East, slave trade developed in East Africa around 1000AD and increased from the 17th Century to the first half of the 19th Century. This was due to the following reasons;

- Slaves were highly demanded all over the world. The Americans all needed slaves to work as miners, laborers, soldiers.
- The primitive cultures of some African societies also promoted this trade. To some societies, it was the only way of getting rid of the worthless members of societies e.g. witches, robbers, impotent men and destitute.
- All the time, there was no developed means of transport. Goods had to be carried by slaves in order to maximize profits after which they would be sold as extras.
- The profits from the trade were immense. This attracted many people to carry out raids like Kamba, Yao and Nyamwezi.
- The tribal wars that characterized many African societies made it easier for the Arabs to obtain slaves.
- Religious prejudice also led to the development of this trade. The Arabs being Muslims and the Koran being against enslavement of fellow Muslims became the principle supplies of non-Muslims to the Arabs.
- The need of foreign goods especially the guns by the interior chiefs also increased with slave raids.
- The hospitality given to foreigners by African leaders encouraged many Arabs including the slave dealers to come to East Africa which increased slave trade activities.
- The development of caravan trade routes eased the Arab penetration into the interior and the subsequent acquisition of slaves.
- Seyyid Said's settlements in Zanzibar also expanded slave trade. He established clove plantations in Zanzibar and Pemba that needed slave labour. Therefore the mainland had to be raided to get slaves.
- The abolition of slave trade in West Africa made it difficult for the Arabs to obtain slaves from there. Their ships hence began to sail at the coast of East Africa for the slaves.
- The establishment of Zanzibar and Kilwa as leading slave markets also increased slave trade.
- The industrial revolution in Europe increased the demand for raw materials to feed the industries but these could only be produced by the slaves.

  The decline of gold trade at the coast of East Africa left slaves as the only profitable trade item worth investing in.

Activity 3

a) Identify the advantages and disadvantages of slave trade in east Africa
b) Identify the new forms of slavery that have continued up to day

EFFECTS OF SLAVE TRADE

• The trade caused a lot of suffering and misery to many societies

• The trade led to detribalization and de-culturalisation as people lost ties with their tribal groupings and others were left homeless

• Many people were killed through raids and others died on the way to the coast

• There was massive destruction of property like farmland, food stores and houses

• The massive raids led to depopulation of many areas in East Africa

• Slaves were mistreated by their buyers as many were chained together, made to move by the whip and not given enough water or food

• The trade led to growth of some crops like rice, maize etc. in order to feed the passing caravans

• Plantation farms were established around the slave trading centers because of the cheap source of labour.

• The trade brought a lot of wealth and prosperity to those who were involved in it

• The slave raids that were carried out on a certain society fuelled bad relations among the different societies

• Agricultural production dropped leading to famine and hunger as the young and energetic people who could have tilled the land were taken as slaves

• The political development of East Africa was also retarded because those who could have been leaders were either killed or taken away into slavery

• Societies like the Yao who had solely relied on slave trade as a source of their livelihood found it hard to adopt a new life when the trade was abolished

• The trade led to the growth and expansion of some societies e.g. Buganda, Busoga, Ankole, Bunyoro, Nyamwezi which expanded due to the guns acquired from the slave traders

• At the same time, the trade caused the decline of some states especially the weak ones that couldn't withstand the constant slave raids

• People like Muhammad Ibn Hamid better known as Tippu Tip, Mirambo, Nyungu Ya Mawe were able to build large commercial empires basing on the gains realized from the trade

• The introduction of guns led to inter-tribal warfare among societies e.g. Bunyoro and Buganda. The gun also became the key to power and wealth

• Many young men grouped themselves into warrior bands (groups) like the Ruga Ruga. These lived by selling their services to African chiefs as mercenaries used in slave trade

- Many quality goods were introduced in East Africa which led to the decline of locally produced goods like the bark cloth making as people then wanted high quality cloth from outside

- It stimulated the growth of coastal and inland towns like Zanzibar, Mombasa, Malindi, Kilwa, Ujiji, Tabora etc. some of these were slave collection centers

- It opened East Africa to the outside world. Many outsiders got to know the East African people through this trade hence the coming of missionaries, later the colonialists

- Similarly, it also led to the coming of missionaries into East Africa. The missionaries came with an intention of stopping slave trade hence spreading their religion in East Africa

The trade also provided a pretext for the colonization of East Africa. Although many whites had flocked to East Africa first to gain from the trade, they later on returned with a purpose of ending it. After achieving this, they established their rule.

- It encouraged internal and foreign trade. Slave traders were not interested in slaves alone   but also other items like ivory, copper, etc. East Africa was therefore commercially opened up to the outside world with traders coming from all over the world

- It led to the spread of Islam in the interior. This was mainly through intermarriages and assimilation. By 1894, many Nyamwezi, Baganda and Yao had embraced Islam.

- At the same time, the spread of Islam was slowed and retarded because the slave traders were identified with it.

- Protection offered by society was eroded and the confidence in traditional rulers and customs was lost; as they couldn't provide protection and security against the slave traders.

- The Swahili culture and language spread in the interior. The Kiswahili language spread because it was the language for business.

- The slave trade routes later developed in the proper communication lines (roads and railways) and this eased European penetration into the interior.

- The trade led to the decline of local industrial structures and crafts. The iron working, pottery and bark cloth industries were all rendered useless and unprofitable compared to slave trade.

Activity 3

Explain the role of African traditional leaders in slave trade and slavery

ABOLITION OF SLAVETRADE

The abolition of slave trade was the ending or act of stopping slave trade.

It was spear headed by the British government which came up with the crusade against slave trade in the 18th century.

This move was inspired by social and Christian revival movements championed by William Wilberforce, Thomas Foxwell Buxton ETC.

What led to the abolition of slave trade?

- The British government spearheaded the abolition of slave trade and this was done by people like William Wilberforce.
- Other people who championed the abolition of slave trade included Thomas fowell,Grandville sharp, Thomas Clarkson
- The formation of the anti-slavery league that voiced their ideas through newspapers, pubic lectures, parliament sessions etc.
- -The support of philosophers like jean Jacques Rousseau
- -The support of religious leaders and groups like white fathers, holy ghost fathers, church missionary society, groups like the Quakers, European explorers like Erhardt who drew a map of East Africa that gave detailed information to European colonialists
- The humanitarians regarded slave trade as an evil act e.g. Dr.David Livingstone regarded it as something too evil, a crime against humanity and for this reason he strongly preached against it.
- The humanitarians and philosophers thus lobbied the British parliament to pass laws stopping the trade and after passing these laws, Britain started persuading other countries to outlaw the trade.
- The industrial revolution in Europe which led to the need of raw materials ,market and land for investment, also influenced the Europeans to stand against slave trade as East Africa was as a potential territory for all these.

  The industrial revolution made the acquisition of slaves as machines had replaced human labour and therefore slaves had to be repatriated back to Africa to reinforce the man power required to grow cash crops to feed the industries in Europe.
- The over production of goods like sugar made it necessary to resettle slaves so as to provide market for the excessive goods produced in Europe
- The British navy force also played an active role in the abolition of slave trade i.e. it patrolled the Indian ocean
- Captain Moresby signed an agreement with Seyyid said which limited slave trade activities to the Arab world
- Population increase in Europe made it useless to bring in more people whose services were by that time not needed
- The abolition of the trans-Atlantic slave trade in west Africa also influenced the abolition of trade in east Africa

- Slave strikes had become so frequent in Europe. They demanded holidays on Sundays on top of land and worshipping rites hence the need to stop the trade
- Colonel Atkins Hammerton, who was a British consul in Zanzibar signed a treaty with seyyid said which cut off the supply of slaves to the red sea and Arabic port.

EFFECTS OF ABOLITION OF SLAVE TRADE

The abolition made Britain to patrol the Indian Ocean in an effort to stop slave trade.

In the initial stages, there was increasing smuggling and trading in slaves since the demand was high more especially in Cuba.

Slave Trade also increased especially in East Africa since many Traders had switched their demands from West Africa.

The British signed a number of treaties with the sultan of Zanzibar and among them were the Moresby treaty, Hamerton treaty and Frere treaty.

Slave Trade markets in East Africa were closed in 1873 and towns like Zanzibar which was key slave trade market lost its wealth.

Legitimate trade was introduced and encouraged which was the trade in other items other than human beings.

New commodities especially cash crops were introduced e.g.……………………………

The abolition led to the coming of more missionaries in East Africa to help in stopping slave trade e.g. the church missionary society, White Fathers.

These missionaries helped in resettling slaves by opening up stations for the freed slaves like at Bagamoya and at the same time teaching them new skills of survival like carpentry, brick laying and others

The dignity of Africans was restored since they were no longer taken or regarded as mere commodities but rather as human beings.

Transport systems like roads, railways were developed to replace slaves as main means of transport and as well as to ease the movement of the abolitionists.

New methods of farming and new European goods were also introduced at the coast and interior.

There was population increase as there was no more export of human beings outside East Africa

Inter-tribal wars that were always fought to acquire slaves reduced and stability was achieved in the interior.

Former slave trade routes developed into communication line e.g. the Central route developed into the TAn-Zam railway line, Northern route developed into the Uganda railway line.

There was decline in slave trade states e.g. Yao, Nyamwezi and others.

There was loss of Independence by the East African states and European powers (Germany and Britain) begun acquiring colonies.

There was loss of wealth and income to those states that greatly depended on slave trade and thus found it very difficult to adjust to a new life.

Activity 4

a) Define the term modern slavery
b) Identify the reasons for the existence of modern slavery in the world today

Study questions

1. **Why did long distance trade develop? / Explain the factors that led to the development of long distance trade / why did east African states participate in long distance trade?**
2. **How was this trade carried/ organized/ describe the main features of this trade in the 19th century?**
3. **Why did slave trade expand in East Africa in the 19th century?**
4. **What led to the abolition of slave trade in East Africa in the last half of the 19th century?**
5. **How did the abolition of slave trade affect the people of east Africa?**
6. **Explain the effects of long distance trade on the people of east Africa by 1900.**
7. **Why did the trade decline?**

TOPIC: 08 SCRAMBLE, PARTITION AND COLONIZATION OF EAST AFRICA

Key words

Agreement

Colonialism

Conference

Imperialism

Influx

Partition

Scramble

Learning outcomes;

The leaner should be able to;

a) Know the term scramble, partition and colonization of east Africa
b) Understand the reasons why Europeans and Asians came to east Africa
c) Understand how Uganda and the rest of east Africa was colonized
d) Understand the results of the colonization of east Africa
e) Appreciate the impact of European and Asian influence in east Africa
f) Understand how the rest of Africa was colonized.

The term Scramble means the European rush and struggle to acquire colonies in East Africa

The Partition of East Africa means the actual division of East Africa into colonies between Germany and Britain

Eventually, Britain took over Kenya and Buganda while German took over Tanganyika

However, the first groups of foreigners to rule East Africa particularly at the coast were the **Asians** (**Arabs and Persian**) in the 1000 to 1500.

ASIANS (ARABS AND PERSIANS) 1000-1500ad

These were the first group of foreigners to come and rule the east African coast in around 1000ad.

These mainly came from the middle orient/east from countries like………………….

They were mainly trader who greatly led to the development of the coastal town between 1000-1500ad.

They intermarried with the coastal people (Coastal Bantu) and formed the Swahili culture/ afro-Arabs along the east African coast.

These were followed by the Portuguese in 1500 to around 1700. Who came from Portugal and conquered the East African coast in 1500.

PORTUGUESE AT THE EAST AFRICAN COAST 1500-1700

These were the first Europeans to permanently settle at the east African coast.

Their coming was spearheaded by Prince Henry the navigator and executed by Vasco da game, ………………………………………………..

They conquered the coast by force between 1489-1510 and established their rule at the coast which lasted for nearly 200 year.

During their rule, rebellions were the order of the day because they used harsh and brutal administrators (these at times were hardcore crimes from Portugal)

Their rule was characterized by acute poverty and decline of coastal towns.

Activity 5

a) Identify the reason for the coming of the Arabs and other groups of Asians at the east African coast.
b) Identify the different groups of Asians that are present in Uganda
c) Identify the reason for the Portuguese settlement at the East African coast
d) identify the Portuguese sailors who came at the coast

EUROPEANS IN EAST AFRICA

Although, the first group of Europeans to come to East Africa were the Portuguese, these did not penetrate/enter into the interior of East Africa.

The British and the Germans were the first Europeans to enter into the interior in around 1840s

These came in various groups;

Explorers

Missionaries

Trader (chartered companies)

Imperialists etc.

These are the groups which scrambled for territories in East Africa.

EXPLORES

Explores were Europeans who came to East Africa guided by geographical or scientific interests.

Explores were travelers who came to adventure about the dark continent of Africa and in particular East Africa.

Some of the explores who came into the interior of East Africa were Richard Burton, John Speke, James Grant, David Livingstone, Rebman, Henry .M. Stanley, Jacob Erhardt ETC

THEIR ROLE IN THE COLONISATION OF EAST AFRICA

Explores were European's travelers who came……, their role in the colonization of East Africa covered the political, social and economic spheres of life.

- There were a number of explores who came to East Africa and of their activities paved away for the colonization of East Africa.
- Some of these explores include the following: Richard Burton, John Speke, James Grant, David Livingstone, Rebman, Henry.M. Stanley.
- Some of the first explores were Speke and Burton. They came with a major purpose of exploring the lakes and rivers of East Africa especially R. Nile. The reports, they made about the source of R. Nile attracted many Europeans leading to colonization of East Africa.
- Explorers also made reports describing the economic potential of East Africa that would be beneficial to Europeans e.g. Stanley reported about the reliable rainfall and fertile soils that were suitable for agriculture thus encouraging colonialist to come.
- Speke after solving the question of the Nile made the British see the importance of Uganda in relation to her interest in Egypt. Thus the British ended up colonizing Uganda to protect the waters of the Nile and Egypt.
- They gave information and some tried to draw maps that attracted the colonizers e.g. Erhart drew a map showing the snowcapped mountains of Kilimanjaro, inland water body and others which arose European curiosity.
- Some explores wrote Books about the interior and it's political and economic potential thus attracting the colonialists to come to East Africa. E.g. the discovery of the Nile by John Hanning Speke, Exploration of the Victoria-Nyanza by James Grant, first footsteps in East Africa 1856 By Richard Francis Burton, What led to the discovery of the Nile John Hanning Speke.
- Explores also destroyed the wrong impression, the European had about Africa in general referring to Africa as "a dark continent or a white man's grave". This was done through drawing maps, writing books and giving public lectures.
- Some explores established good working relations with African chiefs or rulers e.g. Stanley became very friendly to Muteesa 1 and managed to convince him to invite missionaries to his kingdom which missionaries prepared for the colonization of Buganda and Uganda.
- Some explorers also played a major role in the fight against slave trade which created a peaceful atmosphere for colonization e.g. Dr. David Livingston exposed the evils of slave trade and even established a home for freed slaves at Bagamoya.
- Many of the explores were missionaries e.g. Ehardt, Rebman and Livingstone and their activities like translating the bible into local languages , spreading the gospel, accommodating freed slaves made the Africans more receptive to the colonialists.
- A number of explorers became colonial agents or officials who actively participated in spreading colonial rule e.g. fighting rebellions like H.M. Stanley. (Smasher of rocks)
- Explorers like David Livingstone actually supported and encouraged the British to colonize Africa and this was after his journey to West and Central Africa.

- Explorers also named some physical features after prominent leaders or personalities e.g. Speke gave Lake Nalubaale the name Lake Victoria after the British queen, giving the impression of the British presence in East Africa (region), Sir Samuel Baker named Lake Albert after the husband to the Queen.
- Some signed treaties with the African chiefs, on behalf of their societies like RGS, home government, e.g. Stanley signed treaties with the leader of present day Congo.
- Some served as colonial administrator's e.g. Sir Samuel Baker became the governor of the Equatorial province.
- They discovered routes and navigable waters which simplified future movements of future colonialists.
- Some built ports which were later used as administrative centers by the colonialists e.g. Sir Samuel Baker built one at Patiko.
- They called for legitimate trade which hastened colonialism e.g. Dr. David Livingstone
- They called for European civilization in East Africa which simplified the work of colonialists.
- Explores provided information about the hostile and accommodative tribe which enable the colonialists to prepare accordingly
- The success of their adventurous mission led to increased European activities like missionary activities in East Africa.
- They provided funds and logistical support to those who were travelling to Africa e.g. the Royal Geographical Society sponsored the trips of Speke and Grant.

MISSIONARIES IN EAST AFRICA
Missionaries were a group of Europeans who came to E. Africa in the 19th century mainly to spread Christianity.

They came in groups which included;

1) **The church missionary society (CMS)** which had members like Krapf and Rebman from german who worked at the coast in 1840s and alexander Mackay who worked in Uganda in 1877.
2) **The white fathers**
They came in 1879 led by father Lourdel Marpel who came from France.

3) **Mill Hill fathers**
They came to Uganda in 1896 and they were basically from England.

4) **The Holy Ghost fathers**
They were catholic missionaries from France. They arrived in Zanzibar in 1862 and 1868. They set up other stations in Tanzania and Bagamoyo and mostly worked among freed slaves.

5) **The University mission**

They were sent to central Africa and this group worked and freed slaves at the coast and was based in Britain.Dr. David Livingstone belonged to this group.

6) The London missionary society

There were also missionaries from England and they mainly worked around L. Tanganyika region.

7) The United Methodist group

This was a group of Protestants who established themselves at Ribe on the cost of Kenya.

8) The Verona Missionaries

This was the last group come to east Africa. They were based in Italy today they are referred to as the Comboni missionaries. They came in 1910 to Uganda from southern Sudan.

THEIR ROLE IN THE COLONISATION OF EAST AFRICA

The played by missionaries in the colonization of East Africa covered the political social and economic spheres

- Most of the early missionaries did a lot of exploration work and the reports they made encouraged the colonialist to come into East Africa. For example Krapft was the first European to see Mt Kenya while Jacob drew the map to represent the interior of east Africa thus the early missionaries made exciting reports on the vegetation, climate etc. encouraging Europeans to come and take over East Africa
- Their home government usually colonized areas where their respective missionaries had settled like the British replaced the CMS in Uganda, Berlin missionaries were replaced by the Germans.
- Missionaries also taught Africans how to read and write and other basic skills like becoming clerks which simplified communication and besides that this class of educated Africans became outright collaborators with the European colonialists.
- Through Christianity, missionaries also taught Africans to love, not to kill each other but to always forgive to welcome strangers. Such teaching made the Africans dormant and hence reduced resistance against Europeans hence leading to easy colonization.
- Missionaries always cooperated with the administration and home government and even gave them support e.g. in 1893 the CMS led by Bishop Tucker provied money to IBEACO which had run bankrupt enabling the company to operate till1894.
- Missionaries also played an important role as interpreters of treaties and encouraged Africans to sign agreements with Europeans which agreements were used by colonialists to claim territories. E.g., Bishop Tucker encouraged the chiefs to sign the 1900 Buganda agreement

- Missionaries divided people along religious lines e.g. Catholics and Protestants in Uganda thus weakening the people and making it easy for the British colonialists to come and establish their rule.
- In some areas like Buganda missionaries involved themselves in the over throw of local rulers e.g. they combined and overthrew kalem. Missionaries also played a major role in the installation of the young king Daudi Chwa who was too young to fight colonialism. This meant loss of independence in Buganda
- Missionaries also settled in areas where their home government had economic interest, they would therefore identify and inform their home government about the economic potential of the areas where they settled. This attracted colonialists to come and take over the areas.
- Missionaries identified hostile and accommodative societies e.g. Buganda, Nyamwezi and Kamba were reported as accommodative to foreigners while Bunyoro, Galla and Nandi were branded as hostile, which enabled colonialists to prepare accordingly.
- Missionaries also built schools which became vehicles of indoctrination. In these schools Africans were brain washed into believing that everything western was good, such people allowed colonial rule with open hands.
- Missionaries also provided health services by building health centers that reduced on the white man's burden e.g……..
- Missionaries also encouraged the use of foreign languages like Latin and English even translated many books in local languages. This later made communication with the colonialists easy
- Missionaries implemented the doctrine of effective occupation as demanded by the Berlin conference. The conference had demanded that a country claiming an area must effectively occupy it and at least have their representatives like missionaries and infrastructure.
- Missionaries also helped in setting up of infrastructure like roads, railways and mission stations which acted as administrative posts. These were later used by colonialists.
- Missionaries encouraged and supported the coming of the white settlers who opened up projects which generated funds to support colonialists
- Missionaries promoted agriculture and laid a foundation upon which the general economy thrived.

Write short notes about the following (use the internet or textbooks)

1) Dr. David Livingstone
2) Henry Murton/Morton Stanley
3) Johann Rebmann
4) Johannes Ludwing Krapf

TRADERS IN EAST AFRICA

These were the groups of Europeans who came after the explorers and missionaries and they were mainly interested in making profits.

They were mostly British and German traders who first operated at the coast but later ventured and went into the interior using information provided by the explorers and missionaries.

They were mainly looking for new markets, new sources of raw materials, and new areas of which to invest money on behalf of their home government.

Several business men formed companies and associations to operate in East Africa while other worked as individual traders and some of the companies formed included IBEACO, GEACO and Livingstonia central African Company (LCACO)

ROLE PLAYED BY CHARTERED COMPANIES IN THE COLONISATION OF EAST AFRICA
Chartered companies were trading entities whose government had granted special permission to carry out administrative duties on behalf of their government.

In East Africa, there were two chartered companies i.e. GEACO originally known as German Colonization Company and it as name changed to GEACO, it was represented by Carl Peters.

The IBEACO which was first known as the British East African Association and it got a new name after getting a legal chatter from the government of Britain in September 1888.

It was founded by William Mackinnon in the 1880s, it operated in Uganda under Sir Lugard and in Kenya under Mackenzie. The two companies facilitated the colonization of East Africa in the following ways:

➢ The companies signed treaties in East Africa e.g. Mackenzie of the IBA Company in Kenya signed treaties with the kikuyu and Masai, while in Uganda Lugard signed treaties with Mwanga, kasagama of Tooro and Ntale of Ankole. In Tanzania Carl Peters of GEACO signed treaties with the chiefs of Usagara in Kilimanjaro area, these treaties were used by colonialists to claim territories.
➢ Chartered companies used their authority to help in the effect abolition of slave trade. This created a peaceful atmosphere which their government could inherit it without much trouble e.g. in Kenya, Mackenzie went to the extent of giving financial assistance to stop slave trade in exchange of freed slaves.
➢ Chartered companies promoted legitimate trade after stopping slave trade. The companies encourage people to grow cash crops for sale in addition to other non-human commodities after selling them, the people had to pay taxes which helped to reduce the

cost of administration so that the British government could not spend much in running their territory.

➢ The companies also provided the initial man power for the administration of their respective areas of influence e.g. they put up courts of law and other system of administration so that their government could find a good lay down structure and take over smoothly.

➢ The companies crushed revolts and resistant people e.g. the GEACO using German re-enforcement crushed a revolt near Pagani led by Bwana Heri and Abushir Ibn Salim. The IBEACO crushed a revolt of Kabalega in Uganda, Nandi and Masai in Kenya and even the resistance of Catholics and Moslems in Uganda.

➢ The companies facilitated the construction of communication lines, the IBEACO for example the surveyed the course that was to be followed by the Uganda railway. It recommended the construction of other infrastructures like medical centers, administrative costs as effective means of extending European rule in E.A. Other communication lines were put up by the GEACO IN Tanganyika.

➢ The companies created security organs on behalf of their government in order to maintain internal stability and also facilitate the smooth takeover of those territories e.g. the IBEACO had its private army which comprised of Sudanese, soldiers and some Buganda mercenaries while the GEACO established military districts in areas which were most rebellions and these were put under administrators who were military men.

➢ The companies built forts: These forts were built and filled with troops with an aim of scaring off actual and potential resistors e.g. fort Lugard at old Kampala hill, fort Grant, fort Edward, fort portal, fort Lorne, in Uganda.

➢ In Tanganyika instead of putting up forts, they set up military districts in those areas which were suspected of being rebellions e.g. Mahenge and lringa.

➢ The companies provided information about the political and economic potential of East Africa to their respective governments encouraging the governments to come and take over direct control.

➢ The companies undertook business that generated funds that supported colonialism and their assists were taken over by the colonial government.

➢ The companies protected Christian missionaries who were also colonial agents e.g. the GEACO provided security to the Berlin ii missionary group.

➢ Their rivalries and desire to define sphere of influence forced the colonialists to come e.g. The IBEACO and GEACO conflicted in East Africa between 1884 and 1890 until agreements were signed. This agreement politically removed the independence of East Africa.

➢ The chattered companies eventually called on their own government to come and take over when they run bankrupt e.g. The IBEACO called the British government to overtake Uganda and Kenya and the German East African company called the Germany government to take over Tanganyika hence leading to the colonization of East Africa.

- ➢ The companies financed colonial administration on behalf of their respective government e.g., IBEACO administered Uganda and Kenya on behalf of the British Government.
- ➢ The companies identified and exposed areas of economic importance of their home countries which made them to come and colonize such territories.

Complete the table below

Problems faced by explorers	Problems faced by missionaries	Problems faced by traders
Misunderstandings among themselves e.g. john Speke and Richard Burton	Opposition from local rulers e.g. in Buganda	Rebellions from Africans e.g. Mkwawa, Kabalega, Mwanga

FILL IN THE TABLE BELOW

Explorers	Missionaries	Traders
John Speke		

FACTORS THAT LED TO THE SCRAMBLE AND PARTITION OF EAST AFRICA.
(Why European powers were interested in East Africa colonization)

The scramble for territories in East Africa was dictated by economic, social and political changes back in Europe

Economic Reasons.

When countries like German, Britain, France, Russia, Italy and Belgium industrialized they were many changes in Europe leading to the need of acquiring colonies in East Africa.

- ✓ There was increased production leading to over flooding of European markets. This led to a decrease of profits. There was therefore need to secure profitable markets in East Africa.
- ✓ At the same time there was need to acquire areas of cheap raw materials e.g. minerals like……., crops like coffee, cotton, sisal, tea, tobacco etc. This would be used in the European industries.
- ✓ There was also need for acquiring new areas of investments due to increased capital from industries in Europe e.g. new minerals deposits, areas to set up cash crop plantation to feed the European market.
- ✓ There was also need to take over from chartered companies' i.e. The IBEACO, the GEACO which were facing financial problems in administration, the companies had run bankrupt which necessitated a direct take over by their home governments
- ✓ There was need to resettle the surplus population
- ✓ The invention of machines in Europe had rendered slaves useless. These jobless had to be resettled somewhere and East Africa provided
- ✓ The discovery of huge quantity of materials like diamond and gold between 1870's and 1880's in south Africa made Europeans rush to East Africa expecting also to find the same prospects there.
- ✓ There was need to promote legitimate after the successful abolition of slave trade. Africans had to be encouraged to grow cash crops and for this trade to flourish, roads and railways lines also had to be in place. This could only be constructed when the areas were fully under the colonial rule.
- ✓ Unemployment caused by industrialization led to the scramble and partition due fact that machines had replaced human labour thus the need to get new areas which would provide employment.
- ✓ The conflicts between the IBEACO and GEACO over spheres of influence forced the home governments to intervene by signing treaties which eventually partitioned East Africa.

Political Reasons:

- ✓ In 1870, German had united and joined the European powers as a new powerfully country. This triggered off a power struggle among Europeans countries which manifested itself in quest/acquiring colonies thus the struggle.
- ✓ The Franco Prussian war 1870 -1871 also increased the quest or rush for colonies, this war was fought between the Germans and France over the rich provinces of Alsace and Lorraine. This war ended in France's defeat therefore forcing her to rush to Africa to compensate for the loss. Similarly, German could not sit back she had also to rush to Africa to prepare for France revenge.
- ✓ A high spirit of nationalism had developed in Europe causing the countries to acquire colonies in East Africa for national prestige and greatness. The more colonies a country had the more powerful it was considered.
- ✓ King Leopold ii's activities in the Congo region also influenced other European countries to come to East Africa and acquire colonies. Besides that the crisis caused by the three countries Portugal, Belgium and France forced Bismarck to call for a conference that gave Cong to Leopold forcing other to look for colonies elsewhere. Britain was asked to concentrate in East Africa.
- ✓ Even German that had stayed out of the scramble up to that time, rushed very first to acquire colonies i.e. Carl Peters came to East Africa and signed treaties with chiefs in Kilimanjaro areas.
- ✓ The Berlin conference of 1884 – 1886 also accelerated the quest for colonies by giving it a legal acceptance. It came up with doctrine of effective occupation i.e. country claiming for an area had to effectively occupy it by building railways, roads by missionaries etc. European power therefore rushed to Africa including East Africa to claim occupation of the lands that were still available and this is exactly what German did.
- ✓ Scramble and Partition of East Africa was part of the general Scramble for territories in Africa at that time.
- ✓ Carl Peter's arrival and signing the treaties with Mwanga alarmed the British causing the Scramble and Partition.
- ✓ East Africa was scrambled for because of the importance of the sultanate of Zanzibar.

Strategic factors.

- ✓ Other Historians claim that the Scramble was due to strategic reasons,
- ✓ The British had occupied Egypt in 1882 as Egypt controlled the Suez canal which was of great importance to British commercial and political interests in the country, it was therefore important that the Britain controlled the source of the Nile and other areas through which it passed this was because Egypt's live hood depended on the Nile.
- ✓ The British also had to control Kenya because Uganda was land locked and had to be linked to the coast by a railway which passed through Kenya

- ✓ East Africa was also strategically placed to help Britain protect her interest in India and the Far East.
- ✓ Scientific and geographical curiosity was also another factor for the colonization of East Africa. Explorers and geographers wanted to find out more about the Dark Continent e.g. the people of East Africa, the source of the Nile, the great lake system and other physical features.

Social factors

- ✓ There was a new concept and feeling among the Europeans that their race was superior to others and therefore had a right to take over Africans and rule them therefore intensifying the quest for colonies in Africa.
- ✓ There was need to stop slave trade which had caused a lot of misery and suffering to Africans.
- ✓ There was need to stop the useless wars that were being fought between the different societies e.g………..
- ✓ The European powers had also experienced a tremendous increase in population, they therefore wanted to new areas to settle the surplus population.
- ✓ The desire to spread western culture i.e. education, dressing and others also led to the European rush for colonies in east African where they would be able to spread their culture.
- ✓ Religious conflicts in Buganda among the Catholics, protestants and the Muslims created fear among the protestants forcing them to call for protection from their home government Britain thus leading to the colonization of Uganda.
- ✓ The desire to civilize the unfortunate Africans whom they believed were back ward and still carry out barbaric act like…….

CLASS WORK

In group compare the reasons for the coming of Arabs and Europeans

Xxx .THE PROCESS OF PARTITION OF EAST AFRICA. xxx

The process of partition of East Africa begun shortly after the Berlin conference of 1884-5 which had been called by Bismarck of German to solve the conflicts in Congo among the European powers.

The conference laid down rules for European occupation of colonies in Africa without resulting into war.

1. **Terms of the Berlin Conference of 1884-5**
King Leopold ii was recognized as the controller of the Congo region.

The protectorates claimed by other European powers were not to be recognized unless there was proof of effective occupation in terms of setting up infrastructure like roads, schools railway and developing the area,

The European powers were also obliged to stop slave trade wherever it existed and as well as protect Christian missionaries.

2. The first conflict (between the British and Germans in East Africa) 1884-1886

In 1884, Sir Harry Johnston urged the British gov't to set up a kilimanjoro protectorate in the areas around kilimanjoro. However, the British were not willing to do so.

In the same year, Carl peters who had arrived in E.A had signed treaties with chiefs of Ukami, Uzigua, Usagara, Uguru and others on the main land Tanganyika placing them under the German protection.

Carl peters also acquired Witu and other areas around the coast including parts of kilimanjoro areas which Johnston had wished to colonize and they were now officially recognized as German spheres of influence.

Meanwhile, the message had reached the sultan of Zanzibar who protested to the king of Germany Kaiser William 1 and Bismarck claiming that the areas where the Germans had declared a protectorate belonged to him.

At the same time, the British secretary informed the Germans that some British capitalists/traders had inters in the area between the coast and the lakes region and had plans to build a railway line in the area.

By that time, Britain had changed her attitude towards East Africa and had approved Johnstons' treaties in the kilimanjoro areas.

The British colonial secretary informed the Germans gov't that there was need to separate the British sphere of influence in order to avoid powers from conflicting with each other and the sultan.

The discussion led to the signing of the 1886 Anglo- German agreement which was a major step in the partition of East Africa and had the following terms that partitioned East Africa as follows;

TERMS OF THE FIRST ANGLO-GERMAN AGREEMENT OF 1886

- East Africa was to be partitioned from the coast to Lake Victoria into two. The southern part i.e. Tanganyika was to belong to German and the northern part i.e. Kenya was to belong to the British.

- The present day Tanzania-Kenya border was to be drawn to separate the sphere of influence of the two powers.
- The islands of Zanzibar, Pemba and mafia were to be retained by the sultan of Zanzibar.
- The coastal strip, plus the territory 16km (10miles) inland from tunghi Tanga bay in the south to the mouth of river Tana in the north, together with the towns of kismayu, Brava and Merca were to be recognized as the sultans' possessions.
- German was to maintain control over Witu near present day Mombasa.
- Rival claims over kilimanjoro areas were to be settled peacefully between the two powers i.e. Britain and German.
- Both German and Britain agreed to maintain or respect the sultans' territory in other words, they were not to interfere with the area under the sultan.
- Unfortunately, the west boundary of the two powers' area of influence was not defined i.e. the area of present day Uganda. As a result, it led to future rivalry and conflicts.

2ND CONFLICT

- Between 1887 and 1888, the 2nd conflict occurred between the British and the German companies in the river Tana areas.
- In the first instance, the sultan favoured the British company and allowed it to trade in his area and even leased part of his area to the British company for a period of 50 years.
- The British company then started to claim an area even greater of about 300km inland from the coast. Automatically, this brought the British into a conflict with the Germans.
- In addition to these conflicts, the British company quarreled with Italy over the sultans' northern part of kismayu, Mogadishu, Merca and Warshieth.
- On 3rd September 1888, the British company was given a charter. The rivalry between the two i.e. IBEACO and GEACO intensified.
- The German were afraid that the IBEACO might join with the South Africa Company and chase them out of Tanganyika.
- While at the same time the British were also afraid that the German Witu might join with the GEACO and force them out of East Africa.
- Rivalry at the coast continued when Britain managed to secure the sultans' northern parts of lamu, Pate and others.
- In the interior, the company conflicted because Carl peters had signed a treaty of protection with Nabongo Sakwa Mumia of Wanga Mukulu in the province Kenya a British territory then.
- Carl peters even went ahead and managed to sign a treaty of "friendship" with kabaka Mwanga of Buganda. The British became immediately alarmed and tried to sign a similar treaty with Mwanga through Jackson the representative of the IBEACO but failed.
- The 2nd Anglo-German agreement was also signed due to the concern of the safety of the British and French missionaries in Buganda as a result of political and religious conflicts.

- When it was summoned that a German commissioner would visit Uganda, the British anxiety increased thus intensifying the conflict.
- The Germans later feared the French-Russian threats after the fall of Bismarck in the early 1890s.
- There was also a strong desire by the Germans to acquire Heligo Island which force them to sign a treaty with the British.
- Due to the increased tension between the two companies in E.A, the British and German gov'ts decided to discuss the issues and this led to the signing of the 2nd Anglo-German agreement of 1890 also known as the Heligo islands treaty.

TERMS OF THE SECOND ANGLO-GERMAN AGREEMENT OF 1890(HELIGO ISLAND TREATY)

- Uganda was to be confirmed within the British spheres of influence ignoring Carl peters treaty with kabaka Mwanga.
- Uganda-Tanganyika border was to be extended westwards across Lake Victoria to Congo. The land from river Umba was also extended westwards across Lake Victoria.
- German was to loss her northern influence to the British i.e. the area of western Kenya where she had signed a treaty with Nabongo Sakwa Mumia.
- German was also to give up Witu to the British.
- In return, the British were to surrender the northern inland of Heligo land to the German to whom it was strategically important.
- Zanzibar, Pemba and Mafia as well as the sultan' territory in western Kenya were to be for the British.
- German was to be permitted to purchase her part of the 10 mile coast strip from the sultan.
- In this agreement, the British got more the Germans which was the reverse of the 1886 agreement.
- The 1890 agreement virtually solved the conflicts between the British and Germans in East Africa. Scramble and partition was therefore over.
- In conclusion, the two Anglo-German treaties of 1886 and 1890 led to the effective occupation of East Africa by the British and Germans.

COMPLETE THE TABLE BELOW

COLONISED / AFRICAN COUNTRY	COLONINAL MASTER /EUROPEAN COUNTRY

Uganda	Britain
Kenya	Britain
Tanganyika	Germany then Britain
Rwanda	Germany then Belgian
Burundi	Germany then Belgian
Add more countries	

ACTIVTY

1) Draw a sketch map of East Africa and mark the British and German spheres of influence.
2) Draw a sketch map of Africa showing countries and the colonial masters.

Study questions

Why were the European powers interested in East Africa by the mid-19th century?

What led to the scramble and partition of East Africa?

Why was East Africa colonized by the European powers?

Why did European powers acquire colonies in east Africa during the 19th century?

Why did the Germans and British conflict in East Africa btn 1884-1890?

How were the conflicts solved?

What led to the signing of the Anglo-German agreement in east Africa?

What were the major causes of the Anglo-German conflicts in east Africa btn 1884-1890?

Explain the effects of these conflicts on the people of east Africa.

How was East Africa partitioned by 1890?

EFFECTS OF COLONISATION/SCRAMBLE AND PARTITION OF EAST AFRICA

The partition of East Africa led to both positive and negative impacts that were short and long term on society set up in east Africa.

Positive

- The European occupation brought to an end the error of inter-tribal wars and insecurity that had disturbed the peace in the interior e.g. between the Masai and Nandi in Kenya, Buganda and Bunyoro in Uganda.
- The partition of East Africa led to the creation of modern state i.e. Uganda, Kenya and Tanganyika. The African tribes that had remained hostile and separated were brought under one gov'ts by the colonial gov'ts.
- The partition was also beneficial to some extent because it helped to eliminate slave trade that had causes a lot of misery and suffering to the people in E.A.
- The partition of east Africa le to the development of modern infrastructures like the railways e.g.……………
- European occupation of east Africa led to introduction and wide spread of informal education that enabled African to learn how to read and write reducing on illiteracy levels.
- The partition of East Africa led to influx of western culture e.g.…………………………. therefore improving on the standards of living. Besides that, some African practices were callous e.g. killing of twins
- On the other hand of agriculture, the colonial masters greatly improved on the agricultural sector by introducing new farming methods like………..and crop like ………………….
- The colonization of E.A also encouraged the development of legitimate trade which was the trade in other items other than human beings.
- Colonization of East Africa also led to rise of personalities like ………………………..that would have remained insignificant .
- There was also rise of African nationalism as Africans fought for self-rule and movements like Mau-Mau freedom fighters and parties like KANU, DP, UPC, TANU, KADU and others were formed.
- New forms of administration were also introduced in East Africa e.g. indirect rule, direct divide and divide rule.
- The partition of East Africa finally ended the inter-tribal wars that were fought for expansion and dominance by the different tribes e.g. …………….
- The partition also finally ended the conflicts between the British and the Germans in East Africa

Negative

- The partition led to an end of the long period of independence that East African societies enjoyed before.
- Many African rulers were replaced by appointed rulers interfering with the affairs of African states thus leading to the breakdown of tribal authority as chiefs and kings lost their powers.

- The people of E.A were also divided along boundary lines thus colonial powers ignored ethnic groups while dividing East Africa among them i.e. many tribes were divided into two.
- Many African rulers were humiliated as the colonialist attempted to establish their rule in their societies e.g. chief Awich of Payira, Mwanga of Buganda, Kabalega of Bunyoro, Okoiyet of the Nandi, Mkwawa of the Hehe etc. others like chief Aliker of Pajule was dropped into a pit latrine.
- Africans were subjected to European exploitation and African resources were taken away e.g.……………
- Africans also lost their land to colonialists e.g. in Uganda part of the land belonged to the queen of England, in Kenya the highland were taken over by the settler under gov't instruction.
- Forced labour was also introduced and encouraged, Africans were forced to work on European plantations, public works like………..therefore colonialist regarded colonies as properties to be used for economic development.
- The partition also increased missionary activities in E.A which led to division of Africans along religious lines thus created enmity among Africans for example in Buganda.
- The partition led to increased number of Europeans in E.A more especially in Kenya and as a result Africans were put in reserves and discriminated.
- After the partition of E.A, a new class of African collaborators emerged. These were people who worshipped whites and believed that everything western was good and therefore they helped Europeans expand their rule to different areas e.g. Semei Kakungulu, Nuwa Mbaguta.
- The colonialists also interfered with the commercial activities within E.A especially slave trade which was the back born of many societies in East Africa.
- The partition also marked the end of the political and economic importance of Zanzibar since it had become part of the British sphere of influence.
- Colonialists intensified tribalism among African e.g. in Uganda, the Baganda were favoured against the other tribes, in Kenya, the kikuyu were favoured.

In conclusion, the partition of East Africa was a land mark in the history of East Africa and it led to radical changes in the economic, social and political sphere of life up to day.

PROBLEMS FACED BY THE EUROPEANS DURING SCRAMBLE AND PARTITION (EXPLAIN THE POINTS)
- ❖ Language problem-few interpreters
- ❖ Frequent rebellions like Abushir rebellion, Hehe resistance Kabalega and Mwangas rebellions
- ❖ Poor means of transport

- ❖ Few officials or administrators e.g. in Tanganyika the German officials were very few to administer the vast area and thus ended up being brutal. In Uganda the gov't had been given only 40 trained white personnel
- ❖ Tropical diseases
- ❖ Inadequate supplies
- ❖ Wild animals
- ❖ Poor means of communication with their home governments
- ❖ Tropical climate
- ❖ Rivalry between themselves
- ❖ Limited resources/high cost of administration
- ❖ Some of their agents were not loyal i.e. worked for their benefit e.g. Semei Kakungulu
- ❖ Illiteracy of Africans which led to delay in implementing some policies more especially where indirect rule was used
- ❖ The Sudanese soldiers attacks (to expand the equatorial province)
- ❖ Some of their agent were unpopular e.g. the German Akidas and Jumbes, the British agents to Bunyoro

METHODS USED TO ESTABLISH COLONIAL RULE IN EAST AFRICA

After the partition of E.A, the German and British used different methods to establish their rule. These methods were determined by the nature of a society (depended on circumstances) and thus differed from one place to another and time to time and at time more than one method would be used.

- ✓ Use of Christian missionaries, Europeans powers used the Christian missionaries who paved way for the colonization by preaching the message of love and brotherhood welcome strangers and others which convinced Africans that it was a sin to fight against the Europeans
- ✓ Signing of treaties and agreement with African chiefs was another method used by the Europeans to acquire colonies in E.A. e.g………………….. They used such treaties to claim territorial control and establish their rule.
- ✓ Use of collaborators, the Europeans also used African collaborators to conquer and annex areas that were resistant to colonial rule e.g. Semei Kakungulu was used in eastern Uganda, Nuwa Mbaguta and Mitti were used in western Uganda.

- ✓ Use of explorers like ………………………..who gave exaggerated reports to their home gov't about the minerals, nature of people, climate soils besides that some provided initial manpower for administration
- ✓ Use of Europeans settlers e.g. in the Kenyan highland settlers were used to introduce plantation farming which generated funds for the colonial gov't.
- ✓ Use of force, colonialists at time used force to take over territories in East Africa e.g.in Uganda…………………………………….were forcefully pushed out of their societies and colonial rule was established, in Kenya…………………..in Tanzania……………
- ✓ Use of chartered companies, the colonialists used the IBEACO and GEACO to prepare grounds for the colonization of east Africa i.e. they signed treaties with African rulers, crushed rebellions and initial fund and man power.
- ✓ Use of communication lines, colonialists established transport and communication line to show their presence in those areas (effective occupation) besides that, the lines facilitated movement of troops and administrators e.g. Uganda railway, Tan-Zam railway.
- ✓ Use of forts, Europeans also used forts that were filled with troops and weapons and were to deal with Africans who tried to resist colonial rule e.g. fort patiko, fort Lugard (Kampala), fort Edward and others.
- ✓ Intimidation and threats, colonialists also used to intimidate African leaders and made them to accept colonial rule e.g. in Tanganyika, the Germans publically punished those who tried to resist their rule by beating them and sometime hanging them e.g. Abushir was hanged in the center of Bagamoyo. In Uganda………………..
- ✓ Military support, this was given to a society that already submitted to colonial rule to enable them fight their enemies e.g. in Uganda the British gave support to Buganda against Bunyoro.
- ✓ Use of divide and rule, colonialists also used divide and rule where they exploited the existing conflicts/misunderstanding between societies and made them worse such that the two societies did co-operate and fight them e.g.……
- ✓ Use of indirect rule, this is where local rulers were maintained and were used by colonialists to establish colonial rule in their respective societies this method worked well in areas that had centralized gov'ts e.g.………………..
- ✓ Use of gifts, Europeans also used gifts like……………which were given to Africans leader to persuade them to accept colonial rule. This was mainly used in Buganda and Masa.

In conclusion, the colonialists used both violent and non-violent…………………………..

FILL IN THE TABLE BELOW

PEACEFUL METHODS	FORCEFUL/ VIOLENT METHODS

How the rest of Africa was colonized

In French colonies, assimilation was used

British used both indirect and direct

The Italian used used direct

The Germans used mainly direct

Divide and rule was used by all colonial masters

REASONS FOR THE SUCCESS OF EUROPEAN COLONIZATION OF EAST AFRICA

To be discussed in class … (leave space one page)

Attempt activity on page 129 (book; history and political education by Baroque*) leave space of two pages*

Activity.

1) **'Colonialism was a necessary evil'. Debate the motion.**
2) **Do you think Uganda is still under colonial rule? Why or why not?**

NEW TOPIC:09   **AFRICAN RESPONSE TO COLONIALISM/TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF COLONIAL RULE IN EAST AFRICA**

Key words

Collaboration

Resistance

Colonial rule

Agreement

Rebellion

Mercenaries

Scorched earth policy

Learning outcomes;

a) Understand the concept of collaboration and resistance
b) Analyze the factors that made east Africans either collaborate or resist colonial rule
c) Know the key agreements made in east Africa with colonialists
d) Analyze the impact of the signing of the 1900 agreement to east Africans
e) Know the terms and significance of the 1923 Devonshire white paper in Kenya

African societies responded to colonial rule in two ways i.e. by resisting or collaborating.

Some **actively resisted** by fighting the colonialists e.g.………………………

While others **passively resisted** i.e. they didn't take up arms to fight but just refused to collaborate with the colonialists e.g. Chagga, Shamba

Some collaborated with them and even helped them expand their rule e.g.………………….

N.B whatever the response, Africans aimed at maintaining their independence, unfortunately, both category lost/were colonized.

COLLABORATORS

These were individuals or societies which welcomed colonialists and worked closely with them.

Some of them even helped the colonialists to capture their neighbours. This was common in instances where they were two enemy societies. For example Masai and Nandi.

Some of the collaborators included individuals like…………………………………………………..and societies like……………………………………………………………

WHY EAST AFRICAN SOCIETIES COLLABORATED

Africans collaborated with the colonialists due to political, social and economic desires or factors

- African wanted to preserve their independence i.e. they thought that by co-operating, they would be allowed to remain independent.
- Missionary influence, missionaries through their teachings like welcome the strangers changed African attitude towards foreigners (Europeans) and made them recipient to

colonialism. Besides the teachings, missionary education brain washed African thus making them dependents on Europeans hence collaboration.

- Some societies like Toro, Buganda, Ankole and others collaborated because they had been bribed by simple gifts like …………………..
- Others collaborated because they had been hit by natural calamities e.g. the Masai had been hit by small pox, drought and famine which made them weak and thus couldn't resist Europeans.
- Some collaborated out of ignorance of the European interests and thus signed treaties e.g. the 1890 protection treaty between Mwanga and the Lugard .Besides that some thought that Europeans had come for a visit and would be leaving soon. By the time they realized their interests, it was too late thus they decided to collaborate.
- The approached used by the Europeans determined whether a society would co-operate or not i.e. in some areas where Europeans came peacefully Africans welcomed them and co-operated with them e.g. in Toro ………………………….
- Some collaborated because the wanted to get military help from the European against their enemies e.g. Buganda against Bunyoro, Masai against Nandi.
- Some societies collaborated because their traditional enemies had resisted e.g.………………
- Some collaborated out of their individual interests e.g. Semei Kakungulu who wanted to make an empire for himself

RESISTORS

These were people or societies which opposed the establishment of colonial rule in there societies.

They picked up arms and fought against the colonialists.

They included individuals like …………………………………………………………………..and societies like……………

Resistance were divided in to **two**

1) Primary resistances; these were immediate
2) Secondary resistances; these occurred after some time / after the establishment of rule. They were only two major secondary resistances mainly Maji -Maji and Mau- Mau

Primary resistances	Secondary resistance

WHY AFRICANS RESISTED COLONIAL RULE

Africans wanted to preserve their independence e.g. the Nanda, Bunyoro, etc.

- Some African societies believed in natural strength of their armies e.g. Kabalega with his powerful army Abarusura knew that he would be able to defeat the European.
- Some people resisted because of the confidence they got in spirit and magic which they believed could enable them defeat the Europeans e.g. the Maji -Maji fighters got confidence from prophet kinjikitile's magic water which would protect them against the German bullets.
- Other people resisted due to influence of prophecy by their leaders e.g. the Nandi resisted because of the prophecy made by their leader Orkoiyot Kiminyole that a big iron snake would pass through their land splitting fire and fire going to quench its thirst in lake Victoria. It was thus not surprising that when the British constructed the railway through the Nandi territory they were killed and their equipment stolen.
- The pre-colonial relationships between societies also determined their relationship with the European e.g. Bunyoro resisted because she did not want to be in the same boat with her enemy Buganda.
- Some Africans also resisted to protect their commercial interests e.g. Abushir a Swahili trader resisted against the stopping of slave trade, Mwanga resisted Lugard who had stopped him from importing ivory and kabalega resisted Lugard who had stopped him from trading in slave and guns.
- Some societies in East Africa were opposed to colonial administrative policies like forced labour payment of taxes and mistreatment of African leaders and chiefs as it was the case with chiefs of Tanganyika under Germans.
- The approach used by European also forced Africans to resist e.g. although chief Mkwawa had been willing to co-operate with the German, he was forced to fight them when they killed his messagers /soldiers.
- Prided and past victory made Africans confident that they would defeat the Europeans e.g. Mwanga of Buganda and kabalega of Bunyoro.
- Failure for European to be friendly e.g. carl peters who was known for being a cruel man and even acquired a nick name *Mukonowadamu (hand full of blood) a*nd this made people hate him and thus they fought him.
- Some societies resisted in order to preserve their traditional customs and beliefs e.g. the Ngoni, the Gindo, Mutumbi etc. resisted the Germans who had raped their women and taken dogs to their mosques.
- Related to the above Arabs and Swahili societies resisted in order to protect Islam and stop the spread of Christianity.

- Interference with African territorial expansion made some Europeans to crush with African leaders e.g. Mkwawa who was expanding to the coast crushed with the Germans who were expanding from the coast into the interior.
- Cultural imperialism
- Disrespect of African leaders

COMPLETE THE TABLE BELOW (give both individuals and societies)

Collaborators	Resistors

If you were in East Africa during the time of European imperialism, which response would you have had. Support your answer. Write the answers in your book.

KEY AGREEMENTS MADE IN EAST AFRICA

BUGANDA AGREEMENT- 1900

The Buganda Agreement was the most sophisticated agreement ever signed between the colonizer and the colonized in East Africa.

The Agreement was a treaty signed between the British commissioner,Sir Harry Johnstone on behalf of the British government and the three regents of the infant Kabaka Daudi Chwa ie Sir Apollo Kaggwa , Zakaria kisingiri and Stanlus Mugwanya.

Why the Buganda Agreement was signed

The Buganda Agreement was a treaty signed between the British commissioner, Sir Harry John stone on behalf of the British government and three regents of the young Kabaka i.e Apollo Kaggwa, Zackaria Kisingiri and Stanlus Mugwanya on behalf of Daudi Chwa.

The agreement was signed on 10th march 1900 in Mengo.

There a number of reasons why the agreement was signed which are political, social and economic.

- The desire to have effective control over Buganda; the Buganda agreement was signed as part of the British colonial effort to consolidate and strengthen their administration in Uganda /Buganda for effective occupation.

- The agreement was aimed at solving political problems in Buganda and also conflicts between Buganda and Uganda as a whole.
- The desire to reduce Kabaka s' powers; the agreement was signed to limit and control kabaka's powers. This would consolidate the position of the protectorate government.
- The need to follow up the terms of the Berlin conference; It had been agreed at Berlin that for any European power to achieve a colony, she had to show effective occupation. Thus the British had to sign an agreement in order to show this.
- It was also signed in order to define Buganda s' boundaries and its position in the protectorate government. This would solve the territorial conflicts between Buganda and Bunyoro.
- It was also signed to lay a platform for Buganda / Uganda's political, social and economic development.
- The need to reduce administrative costs; the British government was anxious to reduce administrative costs in Buganda and to make Uganda self-reliant and not a burden to the British tax payers.
- The need to settle the political confusion caused by Mwanga. The agreement was signed due to the political confusion in Buganda during the reign of Kabaka Mwanga. In 1898 Mwanga had launched a revolt against the protectorate government and this greatly worried the colonial government.
- The need to control religious wars: The British colonial government also wanted to settle and end the religious conflicts in Buganda so as to enhance missionary work in Buganda.
- Similar treaties were to be signed with Ankole and Tooro hence; this led to the signing of the Buganda agreement.
- The agreement was also signed because Buganda seemed to provide an ideal political atmosphere for development.
- They wanted to streamline the system of land ownership i.e devise a new system and improve land use.
- It was signed because the British wanted to reward leading chiefs who had enabled them establish their control over Buganda.
- It was also signed to clear the confusion and effects of the bad administration of the IBEACo so that the British would begin their own good administration.
- The contribution of the missionaries in the signing of this agreement is very important. This is because the missionaries encouraged the Buganda chiefs to sign the agreement.
- The agreement was also signed as an answer to Bishop Tusker's cries to formalize the privileges of the Protestants over the Catholics and the Muslims.
- It was also intended to find an acceptable way for both the Buganda and the British on how to assist the three year old king Daudi Chwa 11.
- It was signed to end the threat of the Sudanese mutineer in the north. These had started demanding a lot of money from the British who had hired them in 1897.
- The agreement was also to serve as an instrument of colonial exploitation and thus prepared the ground for effective exploitation of Uganda's resources.

- The agreement was to confirm that Buganda had submitted to British rule following the verbal declaration of a protectorate over Uganda in 1894.
- The agreement was also aimed at ending Omukama Kabalega's rebellion.
- It was also to serve as a legal document that would protect and safe guard the British imperialists in Uganda (Buganda).

TERMS OF THE 1900 BUGANDA AGREEMENT (PROVISION/CLAUSES)

The terms of the Buganda agreement covered three main aspects i.e government clause, Land clause and taxation clause.

Government/ Administration clause

- Buganda was to become a province of equal status with others in the protectorate e.g Eastern western and Northern provinces.
- The kabaka's position was to be conditional i.e he was to be left on his throne as long as he co-operated with the British.
- Buganda was to continue with her king and was to be the supreme ruler.
- The king was to be referred as "His Highness" a title that was actually meaningless since he had lost all his powers.
- The Kabaka was to act as a chief link between the British and the people.
- The Kabaka was to govern Buganda through the lukiiko (parliament/legislative council).
- The lukiiko was to remain the law making body and the highest court of Appeal as long as its laws did not conflict with the British laws.
- The lukiiko was to have fixed membership i.e 89 members
- Members of the lukiiko were to consist of 60 notables, 6 kabaka nominees, 20 county chiefs and 3 chief ministers.
- The Kabaka was to be assisted by 3 minis ters ie prime minister, chief justice and treasurer.
- All these ministers and the Kabaka were to paid salaries by the protectorate government. The kabaka was to get 1500 pounds and ssaza chiefs, 20 pounds every year.
- The role of the Buganda court in criminal and civil matters was to be reduced and people were to be encouraged to appeal to the colonial court.
- Issues concerning foreigners were to be referred to the colonial government.
- The Kabaka was to form an army with the permission of the British i.e the army which was in existence by then was to be trained and paid by the British.
- The boundaries of Buganda were to be redefined (fixed) after she was to be made to renounce all territories she had conquered e.g Busoga.
- Buganda was to be divided into twenty counties including the lost counties captured from Buyoro e.g Buyaga and Bugangaizi
- The Kabaka was to appoint chiefs with the protectorate government's approval and these chiefs were to be paid by the protectorate government.
- Daudi Chwa II was to be formally recognized as the Kabaka of Buganda.
- Kingship was to be limited to Muteesa's lineage.

- The Kabaka was to rule under the supervision of the British colonial government.
- African courts were not to give death penalties.
- The growing of cash crops was to be encouraged by the protectorate government.
- The kabaka was not to dismiss any member of the lukiiko without consulting the British colonial government.

LAND CLAUSE

- It was this clause that brought about the greatest change in Buganda.
- Buganda's land was to be divided into two, Half of Buganda was to become crown land (government property) and the other land was to become mailo land (free hold).
- Mailo land of about 10,000 sq. miles was to be divided into different portions which were to be given to the Kabaka and the royal family, leading chiefs and 1000 minor chiefs.
- The Kabaka was to get 350sq. miles, the princes 22sq. miles, the queen mother 10sq. miles and the saza chiefs 8sq. miles each. Freehold titles were to be given to them
- Peasants settling on the mailo land were to be allowed to continue tilling the land where they had settled but were to pay rent (Busuulu) to the landlords.
- The Kabaka was to appoint chiefs to look after this land on his behalf.
- Crown land of about 9000sq. miles was to be reserved for the protectorate government. This was to be for public projects and the queen of England was to have control over it.
- It was to include swampy areas un occupied land, forests, rocky areas etc. It was to be about half of all the land in Buganda.
- People who settled on this land were not to pay rent (Busuulu).
- All natural resources were to be reserved for the protectorate government.
- The protectorate government was to claim any land were minerals were discovered.

Taxation clause

- A hut tax of 3 rupees and a gun tax of the same amount were to be paid by all settlers in Buganda. This was to be collected by the local chiefs.
- The revenue and the amount to be collected from the taxes were to be controlled by the British.
- Exemption from taxation was to be sought from the principle British official.
- No more taxes were to be introduced without the approval of the Lukiiko and the consent of the kabaka.
- All men of 18 years and above were to pay taxes.
- Chiefs were to look after public works, maintain law and order and the construction of roads. They were to be allocated some money to maintain roads that passed through their territories and also infrastructure.
- Revenue from taxes was to be for the protectorate government. In the most important affairs in the protectorate eg revenue and its distribution, railways and steamer management were all to be controlled by the British and not the Kabaka as the case before.

- The collection of tribute from neighbouring states eg Busoga, Ankole, Tooro and karagwe by Buganda was to be stopped.
- The growing of cash crops was to be encouraged by the protectorate government to force Africans pay taxes that would finance the colonial administration.
- The British reserved a right to abrogate the agreement. This was especially incase of failure by the Kabaka and his chiefs to collect taxes or conduct themselves in a way that was unacceptable to the British.
- It is important to note that in case of any problem (query), the English version of the agreement was to be consulted hence the protectorate was to dishonor the terms in case Buganda violated them.

NB The terms should be written in future tense ie **was to, was to be, were to, and were to be**

In conclusion, the terms of the Buganda Agreement, involved political, social and economic clauses that pleased\ favoured the British but did not please\ favour Buganda.

SIGNIFICANCE/EFFECTS OF THE AGREEMENT TO BUGANDA/UGANDA

The Buganda agreement had many effects on the development on Buganda/Uganda up to the time of independence.

- It gave Buganda a prominent status and favoured its position within the protectorate that none of the other kingdoms had.
- Buganda became a state within a state and this continued to affect Uganda's politics.
- There was loss of independence as the agreement confirmed the British authority over Uganda.
- The Buganda did not resist British rule since the administration structure and rules were kept intact.
- Buganda's right over the disputed territories of Buyaga and Bugangaizi was confirmed. This caused greater hostility between Buganda and Bunyoro in future.
- The King himself had nothing except the brand but meaningless title of his highness.
- The kabaka lost his political powers were greatly undermined thus reduced to a constitutional monarchy.
- The kabaka his powers over tax collection were reduced as he was stopped from collecting taxes.
- The kabaka lost his spiritual powers.
- The kabaka lost his powers over land distribution.
- Buganda also lost large chunks of land to the British ie crown land that belonged to the government.
- The Kabaka also lost his judicial powers and could no longer pass death sentences. He was no longer the final court of appeal.
- He also lost his control over his chiefs who became public servants paid by the protectorate government.
- The Kabaka was reduced to an employee to the British and earned a monthly salary.

- The kabaka could no longer rule arbitrarily but was assisted by ministers thus the agreement gave greater powers to the leading ministers and chiefs.
- The giving land to chiefs in the agreement created land aristocracy (landlords) which led to landlessness among peasants and they became squatters on the land.
- A lot of bitterness and anger developed among the peasants whose claims had been over looked especially with the increase in cash crop growing.
- The lukiiko became the legislature ie law making body of Buganda / Uganda.
- The Kabaka lost control over foreigners.
- The lukiiko which was dominated by the Buganda caused bitterness when time came to compose the legislative council. The Buganda did not think broadly in the interest of the whole protectorate since they were contented with the possession of power in the protectorate.
- The agreement empowered the Christian and Moslems chiefs who collaborated with the British.
- The king lost power over the army. He could not raise any army without the British consent. Thus he lost his military powers.
- The king lost control over revenue which was now put under the control of the protectorate government.
- The introduction of the hut tax caused overcrowding in huts in order to avoid paying taxes.
- Taxes also led to the migration of people to areas where colonial rule was not yet effective.
- The taxation system became an incentive to work .
- The agreement encouraged the growing cash crops ie coffee and cotton that provided the government with a regular source of income which enabled the British to carry out their administration effectively.
- Baganda clan heads (Bataka)/traditional rulers lost some of their traditional functions.
- The agreement created a new class of people. The land owners and tenants who could easily be evicted.
- The Baganda collaborated in extending British rule over other areas ie Semei Kakungulu, James Miti.
- The agreement ended political and religious conflicts in Buganda.
- Counties in Buganda were allocated according to religious denominations eg Protestants 10, Catholics 8, and Moslems 2.
- The agreement led to development of roads, Schools, Hospitals and these took place especially in Buganda.
- It laid the foundation for the signing of similar agreements like Tooro (1900), Ankole (1901) and Bunyoro in 1933.
- The British gained more than the Baganda and there was the growth of Nationalism among the Baganda.
- The agreement made Buganda part of Uganda and placed it on the same footing as other provinces

N.B. please separate the positive effects from the negative effects

QUESTIONS

Why was the Buganda agreement signed?

What were the clauses of the agreement?

How did the agreement affect the people of Buganda up to the time of independence?

What is the importance of the agreement to Uganda?

DEVONSHIRE WHITE PAPER IN 1923

The Devonshire white paper was a statement of government policy issued in March 1923 during a conference in London by the Duke of Devonshire who was the colonial secretary by then Christian Victor Cavendish.

He issued it in order to clarify the British government's position on issues raised by the conflicting races in Kenya i.e. Asians, White settlers and Africans.

The conflicts rose as a result of Europeans and Asian influx into Kenya. Land and rights were the main issues in the dispute.

The conflicts were political, economic and social.

By 1923, groups had even formed political parties to act as plat forms for airing out their views or demands.

Settler interests were being championed by Lord Delamere and Col. Grogan

AM Jeevajee championed the Asian interests.

WHAT LED TO THE SIGNING OF THE DEVONSHIRE WHITE PAPER.

(Circumstances that led to the signing of the Devonshire white paper)

After the construction of the Uganda railway, the White settlers increased in number to help in the economic development of the country mainly in agriculture and trade and consequently they occupied the Kenyan highlands plus all other fertile areas

Africans were displaced and put in reserves.

At the same time, the Asians started coming into Kenya and soon controlled the commercial market. (Trade in Kenya).

This led to conflicting political, social and economic demands by the three races which led to the signing of the Devonshire white paper as a way of solving the conflicts.

WHITE SETTLER'S DEMANDS

➢ The white settlers had acquired the fertile Kenya highlands but the Africans and Asians were threatening their stay there. They therefore wanted to retain these fertile areas alone and did not want any other group to occupy the same area.

➢ The setters also demanded for constant labour supply and firm control over it.

➢ At the same time whites setters wanted a bigger say in the government of Kenya as a colony separate from England, in other words they wanted to declare themselves independent of Britain.

➢ As early as 1907, white settlers had been given positions (seats) on the legislative council and by 1920 their number had been increased to11.they wanted more representative yet the Asians and African did not have any.

➢ In 1918, the white setters had been given seats on the executive council yet other races had not been given this opportunity but they still demanded for more.

➢ Setters wanted to turn Kenya into a self-governing dominion under white domination.

➢ The setters considered themselves superior to other races in Kenya and strongly advocated for separate developments in social service like education and health as it was in South Africa and Rhodesia. They did not want to share social services with Africans and Asians.

➢ To make matters worse, during World War 1 the British government had relied on the white setters greatly for assistance and in exchange, the government increased the favours extended to the setters.

➢ The European setters also wanted the colonial government to discourage Africans from growing cash crops so that they could only serve as labourers on European farms.

➢ Governor Edward Northey made it clear that the demands of the white settlers were of great importance in the territory than the interest of any other group in the territory.

➢ In 1922, however Edward Northey was called to Britain because it was thought that he had given a lot of privileges to the whites.

➢ The appointment of Sir Hayes Sadler as governor in 1905 before Northey worsened the situation since he was too lenient and sympathetic to the settler's cries e.g. the executive and legislative councils he had formed before were filed by whites which offended the other races.

➢ Lord Delamere and Grogan worsened the situation by being too aggressive and uncompromising. The two set up a number of associations to serve as a plat form for airing out their grievances.

➢ Hence white settlers set up the Convention Association, a party that was used to air out their views.

ASIAN DEMANDS

➢ The Asians wanted equal treatment with the Europeans. Most of them were successful business men while others were clerks, accountants etc. and therefore resented the special position of the Europeans.

➢ Asian also wanted (equal) representation on the legislative and executive councils of Kenya. The white had been given positions on the legislative council in 1907 and their

number had been increased to 11 by 1920 yet the Asians who even outnumbered them had not been considered.

➢ Asians were also tired of racial segregation in education, employment, health and business sectors. They thus wanted equal treatment with the white settlers but the settlers were against such equality.

➢ The Asians also wanted unrestricted immigration into Kenya by the white settlers. Their entry into the country had been checked as a result of the influence of the whites.

➢ The Asians were also annoyed by the facts that they were only allowed to live in towns. They thus wanted to acquire land in the fertile Kenyan highlands. The white settlers had exclusively dominated them.

➢ Asians wanted the same voting rights as Europeans.

➢ These grievances were mainly directed towards Europeans but unfortunately, they were uncompromising.

➢ They led to the rise of key Asians like Maklhan Singh who advocated for equality.

➢ The Asians relied on the British colonial government in India and African. Equality in politics and economic policies in simple terms is what the Asians wanted.

➢ The Asians formed associations like the East Africa Indian Congress (EAIC) led by a leader/trader called A M Jeevanjee. This became the platform for airing out their grievances.

AFRICAN DEMANDS

➢ The Africans first and foremost wanted their land back that had been taken away from them by the white settlers especially the Kikuyu.

➢ They also wanted respect of their traditions.

➢ They wanted better labour conditions. Many of them were forced to work on European farms where the working conditions were poor and pay was very low.

➢ The Africans demanded for the withdrawal of the kipande (identity card) that made them look like prisoners in their own country.

➢ They also wanted a reduction in taxes especially the poll tax which had suffocated and yet many of them had no where to get the money. All their land had been taken and the growing of cash crops restricted.

➢ Africans demanded for similar education opportunities. They had been denied education in order to keep them backward providing only the unskilled labour on the settler farms.

➢ Africans were also restricted from growing cash crops by the whites claiming that this was likely to lower the quality of the Kenyan produce.

➢ African also wanted their independence from the colonial government.

➢ Africans thought for different reasons had the support of the Asians. They backed them on condition that they were also to back them.

➢ From 1920, many Africans were also demanding for representation in government. They had been totally left out of politics apart from a few Kikuyu who lived in Nairobi.

➢ Just like other races in the conflict, Africans formed tribal associations like the Kikuyu Association in 1920 and the Young Kavirondo Association.

- It was against this background that in March 1923, the Duke of Devonshire summoned the two main rival groups i.e. Asians and white settlers to a conference in London to end the rivalry between them.
- The settlers' group was led by Lord Delamere and Asians led by A.M Jeevanjee. What came out of this conference is what is popularly known as the ''Devonshire'' white paper declaration.
- Therefore, the Devonshire white paper was signed as a result of the different demands, conflicts and complains from the whites, Africans and Asians in Kenya.

THE TERMS /PROVISIONS OF THE DEVONSHIRE WHITE PAPER HOW THE PROBLEMS WERE SOLVED OR HOW DID THE DUKE SOLVE THE CONFLICTS.

- The Kenyan highlands were to be reserved for Europeans' settlement only i.e. white settlers.
- The Asians and Indians were to be allowed to elect five members to the legislative council but not on the same voter's book or roll with the whites.
- The Asians were to be represented on municipal councils.
- There was to be no more restriction on Asian immigration (entry) into Kenya.
- The colonial office in London was to be watchful over the Kenyan affairs in order to see that the interests of Africans were protected and given first priority.
- A missionary doctor Arthur was to be nominated to the legislative council to represent African interests.
- There was to be no more discrimination in residential areas settling these areas was now open to all people.
- The legislative council was to have 11 Europeans, 5 Asians, and a missionary to represent African interests.
- Africans were to be allowed to be members on the native local councils.
- The document was to recognize the contribution made by the European community in the development of Kenyan settlers.
- The paper clearly stated that Kenya was primarily to be an African territory and that the interests of Africans were to be paramount.
- It also stated clearly that settlers were to no longer have any controlling influence on the government. There was to be no further advance towards settler's domination.
- The papers clearly warned settlers against making further advances towards self-rule. It made it clear that all rival groups were to gradually work towards self-government.
- Activities
1. Identify the demands of Africans
2. Are there similarities between African demands and Asian demands? If your answer is yes, identity them.

EFFECTS/ IMPORTANCE OF THE DEVONSHIRE WHITE PAPER

The paper affected all the races in Kenya however none of the three groups i.e. white settlers, Asians and African was pleased with the outcomes of the Devonshire white paper.

- ✓ The white settlers had hoped to gain political control over Kenya but were denied this and therefore continued to struggle for the sake.
- ✓ The white settlers after being frustrated politically decided to ensure their dominance economically by making it a point to control finance, agriculture and industry.
- ✓ The settler's lost their dream of ever controlling Kenya as a racist colony. They had been warned against further advances towards self-rule.
- ✓ The paper confirmed Kenya as a settler colony. This increased the number of Europeans coming in Kenya.
- ✓ It also recognized the contribution made by the settler community towards Kenya's economic development.
- ✓ The Asians weren't happy because they weren't allowed to acquire land in the Kenya highlands .The paper had exclusively reserved them for the whites. This greatly disappointed the Asians and Africans.
- ✓ The giving of the highlands to settlers increased plantation farming and subsequently the growing of the cash crop economy.
- ✓ Asians were also denied political equality with Europeans and for this reason, they refused to hold elections for the five seats granted to them in the Legislative council.
- ✓ The white paper intensified the Asians opposition to the council and the five seats were not fully occupied until 1933.
- ✓ The Asians continued to oppose the different taxes imposed on different races. They weren't happy with the inequality that the paper had failed to address and for this reason, they refused to pay a different tax from what the white settlers were paying.
- ✓ Furthermore, The Asians protested against the racial segregation that remained evident in the education system.
- ✓ The paper served as a warning to the settlers and Indians that their struggles to colonies Kenya would not be accepted. Kenya was for the Kenyans and their interests would be given priority.
- ✓ The paper clarified that neither the white settlers nor Asians would gain monopoly in the administration of Kenya.
- ✓ The free immigration policies resulted into many Indians coming to Kenya. These became a major force in Kenya's economy.
- ✓ The paper failed to address the land and labour problems on settler's farms African were to continue to provide labour on settler farms, something they strongly hated and had hoped the paper would address.
- ✓ Due to increased pressure and influx of migrants, The East African high commission was established to promote co-operation between Africans, Asians and white settlers.
- ✓ The Africans whose interests were to be paramount actually did not gain anything from the white paper and as a result, Africans political movements were started e.g. the Central Kikuyu Association.

- ✓ Many African leaders felt that it was strange that their representatives in the legislative council were actually whites and were against some of their cultures e.g. female circumcision.
- ✓ Indeed Africans lost confidence in missionaries and their attitude towards them was divided.
- ✓ The Africans also realized that their interests would never be attended to by Europeans and thus decided to fight themselves and one of the effect of their struggle was that Africans were allowed to sit on the legislative council.
- ✓ The white paper contributed to the instabilities in Kenya by increasing hostility among the three groups i.e. Asians, Africans and white settlers. This was because each of them promoted its own interests while disregarding the others.
- ✓ The paper however, later fostered unity among the Africans and Asians as e.g. were the most affected.
- ✓ The colonial government started training and educating Africans, a measure that was intended for them for future responsibilities and Independence.
- ✓ The paper exposed the intention of the white settlers in Kenya. They were after taking over the country.
- ✓ African started sharing in the running of their country through the native councils and in 1931, they were allowed to send representative on the legislative council.
- ✓ The paper prepared Kenya for the aimed resistance of the 1950's that laid the foundation for future independence struggle e.g. armed groups like Mau-Mau were formed by the Africans to fight for their lost land and Independence unit it was achieved in 1963.
- ✓ Therefore, the Devonshire white paper was a turning point in the history of Kenya and laid basis for future struggle in Kenya especially among the Africans.

Comparison between the Buganda agreement of 1900 and the Devonshire white paper of 1923

Similarities

- ❖ Both agreements addressed land issues.
- ❖ Both agreement addressed leadership positions.
- ❖ In both agreements, negotiations about the terms were carried out.
- ❖ In both agreements, Africans lost a lot to the whites.
- ❖ Both agreements served as a set of laws used during colonial administration
- ❖ Both agreement caused a lot of future hostility e.g. Kabaka crisis of 1952 and Mau Mau rebellion

Differences

- ❖ The terms of the Buganda agreement were implemented while in the Devonshire few terms were implemented.
- ❖ Buganda agreement was between two governments while Devonshire was between the colonial secretary and the different races in Kenya.
- ❖ Buganda agreement was signed before the establishment of colonial rule while Devonshire was signed after the establishment of colonial rule.

- ❖ Buganda agreement involved only two parties while Devonshire had three parties
- ❖ Buganda agreement was signed in Africa while Devonshire was signed from London.
- ❖ Buganda agreement acted as the set of laws for the British administration while Devonshire was not.

Activity

1. Why do people sign agreements today?

S.2 TOPICS/CHAPTERS

THEME: COLONISATION AND STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE IN EAST AFRICA

Chapter 01: The Colonial Administrative system in East Africa

Key words

Collaboration

Colonialism

Colony

Direct Rule

Indirect Rule

Protectorate

Resistance

Rule

Colonial administrative system refers to the system that was employed by the European colonizers to impose their imperial rule on East Africans.

Two methods were used by the Europeans.

- i. Indirect rule used by the British in Uganda and Kenya and later in Tanganyika in 1919.
- ii. Direct rule used by the Germans in Tanganyika (G.E.A) up to 1918.

Ask your neighbor the following questions:

- (a) How are school rules and regulations formulated in your school?
- (b) How are school prefects selected in your school?

(c) Under what circumstances may a head teacher implement school rules and regulations on behalf of the school administration directly by him/her?

(d) What is the importance of using prefects to implement school rules and regulations on behalf of the school administration?

(e) What problems do school prefects meet in exercising their power?

(Skip 2 Pages for learners to answer these Qns)

INDIRECT RULE

This was a system of colonial administration that used indigenous (traditional) rulers and institutions to govern their territory.

The indigenous rulers included the kings, chiefs and paramount chiefs while the indigenous institutions included kingdoms, chiefdoms, counties etc.

British colonial masters would pass on orders or laws to the natives or traditional ruler for implementation.

The system was mainly used by British after 1900. The designer of the policy was Captain Fredrick Lugard, he even wrote a book to explain how the policy would work known as "The Dual Mandate in Tropical Africa"published in 1922.

The British administrators would pass on orders to the traditional rulers who in turn would pass on the same orders to their subjects.

In other words, conquered kings and chiefs were used to administer the conquered masses but under the direction of the British administration.

Under this system, traditional rulers were left with some powers like collecting taxes, presiding over local courts (using traditional laws) and the British only came in, in case of resistance.

This system only worked in centralized kingdoms in which acceptable rulers within traditional authority existed e.g in Buganda Ankole and Toro.

Indirect rule was shrewd and ambitious in that African collaborators extended colonial rule and such collaborators included; Semei Kakungulu, Sir Apollo Kaggwa, James Miti, Nuwa, Mbaguta, Laibon Lenana of Masai etc.

The system totally fooled Africans to the extent that they completely forgot that their independence was being eroded.

It shielded the British administrators against any threats and resistance from the Africans i.e in case of blame, it was the African chiefs to be blamed and not the whites.

It perpetuated class among the people that is the ruling class and agents.

The system was basically built on divide and rule principle.

WHY THE BRITISH USED INDIRECT RULE IN UGANDA/EAST AFRICA.

- The system was found socially, economically and politically convenient to the British especially when the compared to direct rule policy.
- The system depended on the use of traditional rulers who were centres of power in their areas of rule, thus they could easily be accepted.
- Buganda kingdom had a centralised system of administration which suited indirect rule.
- At the same time the rulers used to get education in administration right from childhood therefore the British knew that the rulers could be effective in exercising their duties.
- The British feared immediate negative response from the Africans if direct rule was to be used. Therefore they decided to use local rulers. They also feared that direct rule would lead to wide spread resistance.
- They wanted to use the local rulers to act as shock absorbers. In the event of people rebelling against unpopular policies introduced by the British, the people to suffer would be the rulers and not the British.
- The policy allowed local rulers to exercise some degree of authority; therefore the people would not feel the burden of the white man who was actually in control.
- The British also realized that the policy would maximize efficiency since the local chiefs were working to the best of their abilities so that they would be left in power.
- Furthermore, the British believed that the local rulers understood their people better because they lived with them i.e. (knew their way of life) hence knew how to introduce law and polices at ease.
- Indirect rule would also minimize the communication problems (Language barrier), information would flow much easier to the people since local languages would be used by the local rulers compared to the use of English.
- In direct rule promoted the British policy of divide and rule , in that he kept people disunited in their tribal boundaries such that they would not come together to fight the British.
- The British also claimed that they were trying to prepare the Africans for the time when they would govern themselves after independence thus leaving them in position of responsibility.
- The system was also used because of inadequate man power. The young British administration did not have enough skilled labour which was necessary if direct rule was to be used.
- The British admired the kiganda mode of administration (centralized administration). Indirect rule therefore worked very well in Buganda and the British decided to use it in other regions of the protectorate.

- The system was used because it had been used successfully elsewhere e.g. Northern Nigeria
- The system was also cheap since chiefs and kings were not paid much compared to the pay that would be given to the British officials.
- It was intended to make the British look unique i.e. their rivals (Germans) had used direct rule and the French had used assimilation.
- The also believed that the system would enable the exploit Ugandan resources effectively through the local leaders.
- The British also believed that local / traditional rulers were respected and obeyed in their societies by their subjects and using them was paramount eg Baganda highly respected their Kabaka.

APPLICATION OF INDIRECT RULE IN UGANDA (How indirect rule was applied)

British Parliament

↓

Colonial Secretary

- Based in London
- Incharge of colonial affairs
- took orders from the British Government

Governor ▼

- Based in Entebbe.
- Incharge of a colony (Uganda).
- Took Orders from the Colonial Secretary.)

Provincial ▼ Commissioner

- They were six.
- Incharge of provinces and took orders from the Governor.

District commissioners

- Incharge of Districts
- Worked under close supervision and took orders from the Provincial Commissioner.

County Chiefs (African involvement starts)

- Incharge of counties.
- Took orders from the District Commissioner.

- These were Africans.

Sub-county chiefs

- Incharge of sub-counties.
- Took orders from the County Chiefs.

Parish Chiefs

- Incharge of Parishes.
- Took orders from the sub-county chiefs.

Sub-Parish chiefs

- Incharge of the sub-parishes.
- Took orders from the Parish Chief.

Village Headmen

- Incharge of the villages.
- Took orders from the sub-parish chief.
- Passed orders to the common ma
- ❖ Indirect rule was more successful in societies like Buganda which were centralized and where the local rulers were reserved as long as they cooperated with the British.
- ❖ African leaders were the main actors who got policies from the British and passed them over to the minor chiefs who in turn passed them over to the people. This was mainly the case in Buganda.
- ❖ Indirect rule worked in such a way that at the top was a colonial secretary based in London. He was in charge of colonial affairs and answerable to the British parliament.
- ❖ Below the colonial secretary were the governors heading the colonial administration at a colony level. In Uganda's case, Entebbe was the headquarter. These were obviously whites and were answerable to the colonial secretary.
- ❖ Below the governors were the provincial commissioners heading every province. In Uganda there were six provinces and the commissioners were answerable to the governor.
- ❖ Below the provincial commissioners, were the district commissioners heading every district. These took orders from the provincial commissioners and worked under very close supervision
- ❖ For easy administration, the districts were further divided into counties each under a county chief. These were Africans and took orders from the district commissioners.

- ❖ Counties were further subdivided into sub counties and these were ruled by Africans and answerable to the county chiefs.
- ❖ Sub counties were divided into smaller units called parishes under parish chiefs and were answerable to the county chiefs.
- ❖ Parishes were subdivided into sub parishes under sub parish chiefs and these took orders from parish chiefs.
- ❖ Below the sub parish chiefs were the village headsmen heading every village .These got orders from sub parish chiefs and would pass them over to the common man.
- ❖ Therefore all these chiefs from the village headsmen up to the governor formed a chain of command.
- ❖ Indirect rule worked at the local level from the district up to the village level. All these positions were reserved for Africans.
- ❖ Indirect rule was based on the assumption that every area was like Buganda which had a centralized system of administration. Thus it failed in decentralized areas.
- ❖ In other areas, however like in Ankole and Toro where similar agreements were signed in 1901, the foundation of the traditional institutions and kingship were weak although indirect rule was used.
- ❖ In Toro, indirect rule was not all that a success. This was because the colonial government had failed to give the chiefs mailo land as promised in the 1901 Toro agreement. Moreover some Batooro had refused to recognize Kasagama as their leader.
- ❖ In Ankole, some Bairu were used by the British to rule the Bahima.
- ❖ In Eastern Uganda, Semei Kakungulu, a British loyalist was used to administer the area on their behalf. He divided the area into counties and created an administrative structure, modeled in the kiganda way.
- ❖ The story was not different in kigezi where Yoana Sebalijja was required to get rid of the traditional institutions in the area and create a kiganda structure.
- ❖ In the north where there were no organized governments, the British created their own chiefs and council of elders e.g Amet who had no hereditary claims to power was made a chief or Rwot.
- ❖ In Bunyoro the British appointed Baganda agents like James Miti to administer Bunyoro on their behalf. However this was seriously resisted in the Nyangire revolt of 1907 and Miti and his colleagues were expelled from Bunyoro and took refuge in the district headquarters at Hoima.
- ❖ Local chiefs and council leaders were supposed to keep law and order, collect taxes, preside over local courts, mobilize people over public work, and maintain schools and dispensaries.
- ❖ The whites only came in as advisors or supervision in case of resistance.
- ❖ Justice was to be implemented by the local chiefs but cases involving the whites were handled by the colonial government.

- ❖ Humiliating and dehumanising punishments were enforced on big headed chiefs eg Rwot Awich of Payera.
- ❖ African chiefs were given salaries and wages as a way of wining their loyalty.
- ❖ The British government in London made the laws on which Africans were to be administered.
- ❖ There was the central government council based in Entebbe. Its duty was to advice the governor and similar councils were also established in every district.
- ❖ The local council was financially weak and depended on hand outs from the central government
- ❖ The British government also established administration posts and built roads and railway lines to effect indirect rule.
- ❖ After 1930 the powers of local chiefs were reduced as the British officials became many and assumed more powers.

DISADVANTAGES\ SET BACKS\WEAKNESSES OF INDIRECT RULE

EFFECTS OF INDIRECT RULE

- Indirect rule reduced the authority of traditional rulers, for example, in Buganda, the king could not act with full authority as before, but instead was a puppet of the British. The king and chiefs only received instructions and implemented them according to the will of the Europeans.

- In other areas outside Buganda, traditional institutions were tampered with and local leaders completely lost power e.g. in Eastern Uganda.

- The policy promoted tribalism since it emphasized traditional institutions, like Kingdoms or chiefdoms and maintaining their boundaries. In each society administration was done on tribal basis and since most agents were got from Buganda, eventually Buganda was hated.

- Indeed, the fact that Baganda agents were used to introduce the system to other areas and these agents were foreigners in such areas and introduced foreign systems further strengthened tribalism. The result was that this denied Ugandans the chance to benefit from other people's culture and instead feared each other.

- This also led to the formation of political parties on tribal basis, thus slowing down the independence struggles.

- The policy promoted resistances especially in areas where traditional leaders were replaced e.g. in Bunyoro in the Nyangire revolt of 1907 as well as other resistances in Acholi, Karamoja, and West Nile. Etc.

- The policy also enabled the British to effectively exploit Uganda's resources since African chiefs executed all the obligations on their behalf without the realization of their subjects i.e. they would force their subjects to grow cash crops etc.
- The policy neglected serious education in Uganda. Africans were only given elementary education to enable them become clerks, secretaries and interpreters to effect the system.

NB This however saved Uganda from being a settler colony since Africans were carrying out their duties well thus there was no need for Europeans.

- The system led to the rise of African Administrators/ leadership skills like Semei Kakungulu, Sir Apollo Kaggwa.
- Indirect rule also led to improved standards of living i.e. those who worked hard were able to meet their needs.
- The system enabled Africans to acquire administrative skills e.g. Sir Apollo Kaggwa.
- Indirect rule to some extent created stability which enhanced development compared to other areas where direct rule was used (e.g. Buganda developed more).
- Through indirect rule new taxes were introduced in Uganda e.g. Hut tax, gun tax, poll tax etc.
- Indirect rule also led to the delay in the process of attainment of independence since the chiefs were mindful of their interests than those of the territory.
- It led to the spread of the Kiganda system/ model of administration to other parts of Uganda e.g. in Busoga.
- It also made Buganda develop secessionist tendencies since she formed her only province. She therefore demanded to break away from other provinces. (From the protectorate).
- The system also enabled the British to effectively exploit Ugandan resources i.e. people's tendency to rebel had been killed.

WHY INDIRECT RULE FAILED? /WEAKNESSES/ SETBACKS/DISADVANTAGES OF INDIRECT RULE

- The policy could not be used in decentralized societies where the lines of authority were not well defined. It was difficult to get a single individual to lead the society in a decentralized system. For example the British had made Chief Achia in Karamoja the ruler in order to solve the problem of lack of a single accepted authority. Unfortunately, Chief Achia was killed and the British rule came to an end.
- In most cases, the policy ignored merit and individual talent as a means of promoting one into power and instead put emphasis on traditional ruling families to remain in power.
- Resistances/ rebellions from some regions e.g. in Bunyoro, the people expelled the colonial agents.

- Use of incompetent agents in some regions e.g.
- Personal interest versus administrative obligations. E.g. semei kakungulu who wanted to accumulate wealth and make a name for himself.
- Language barrier because of the many languages spoken in Uganda. The British officials could not use any the local languages as an official language. (Local people didn't also understand English)
- Poor communication network (coordination and communication between Entebbe and other regions was very difficult).
- Inadequate manpower, the British government trained and sent only 40 personnel to help in administration in Uganda.
- Change in attitude of Buganda towards the British administration e.g. in 1955 the Baganda denounced the 1900 Buganda agreement.
- The system also lacked support from the local population in some areas e.g. in kigezi.

SIMILARITIES AND DIFFERENCES BETWEEN THE BRITISH INDIRECT RULU AND THE CURRENT LOCAL ADMINISTRATION IN UGANDA

Personalities

a) Semei kakungulu
b) Sir Apollo Kagwa

DIRECT RULE IN TANGANYIKA.

This was the Germany system of colonial administration that was used in Tanganyika.

Direct rule involved the Germans directly in the administration of their colony.

Under this system, the traditional chiefs lost their power and authority to the Akidas and Jumbes who Africans of Asian origin from the coast.

The system was dictatorial and ruthless and hence led to a lot of resentment from the Africans.

WHY THE GERMANS APPLIED DIRECT RULE IN TANGANYIKA.

- The Germans believed that it was the only system through which they could effectively administer Tanganyika.
- They also believed that it was the only way that they could effectively exploit resources within Tanganyika.
- The Germans had used force to take over many parts of Tanganyika and therefore soldiers had to be used so that Africans wouldn't easily revolt.

- The Germans wanted to impose their superior culture over the Africans and this would involve imposing their culture and legal system.
- The Germans were also proud people and therefore used this system to stand high and above Africans.
- The Germans had suffered early revolts and therefore had to bring in the harsh Akidas and Jumbes to tame the Africans.
- In many societies, there were no chiefs and where they existed they were not faithful or powerful enough and therefore the Germans had no one to entrust authority with.
- They enough manpower to run all departments and saw no need to recruit Africans in colonial administration.
- The Germans also feared the expenses of training Africans before they could takeover administration because this could strain their budget.
- The Germans were selfish and didn't want to share the exploited resources with the Africans and that's why they used direct rule.
- The Germans also used direct rule of their inexperience in colonial administration because they had just started acquiring colonies.
- The Germans also feared using indirect rule that was being used by their rivals [British] because this was going to increase rivalry and competition among them.

HOW DIRECT RULE WAS APPLIED IN TANZANIA.

- At top was the Governor who was the head of the colony stationed at Dar –es-Salam and most cases a soldier.
- The Governor had wide powers and authority and was directly answerable to the colonial minister in Berlin [Germany]
- In 1904, there was there was the Governor's council that was set up to advise the Governor.
- For efficient administration, the Germans divided Tanganyika into districts and by 1914, they were twenty two.
- Each district was under a district officer called Berzirksamtmann, with a police force and army to to maintain law and order.
- District officers acted as judges and appointed chiefs to preside over courts and administer punishments on their behalf. They were also the highest court of appeal.
- Districts were further divided into counties which were further split into counties and sub counties of 20,000 to 30,000 people.
- Areas that showed hostility to Germany rule, were put under military rule e.g. by 1914, the two districts of Iringa and Mahenge were under military because they were chaotic.
- The governor district officers and members of Governors council were all whites. The whites dominated the top positions and the Africans were left to rule at the lower levels.
- Below the district officers were the Swahiri Arabs called Akidas and below the Akidas were the Jumbes who were in charge of the villages.

- Akidas and Jumbes were in charge of tax collection, supervision of cotton schemes and public works. They were also supposed to appoint and dismiss junior and presided over local courts of law.
- Many local chiefs were stripped of their powers and were replaced by Akidas and Jumbes and in areas where no existed, the German just appointed the Akidas in place.
- These turned out to be very harsh and brutal to fellow Africans and in the end, they made German administration unpopular.
- German administration was characterized by mal-administration, cruel methods of tax collection and forced labour on road construction, communal cotton growing.
- Areas that co-operated with the Germans, they were left with their local chiefs e.g. in Usambara after the death of chief Samboja and in Unyanyembe after the death of chief Isike.
- The Germans were arrogant, and isolated themselves from the Africans which caused a lot of rebellions from the Africans e.g. Maji Maji Rebelion.
- This system of administration attracted many Germany settlers who also influenced the colonial government policy against Africans.
- In some areas where the societies were organized, the Germans used some indirect rule and left the Africans to rule e.g. among the Galla.
- German rule came to an end in 1919 when the League of Nations granted Britain authority over Tanganyika because Germany was being punished for causing World War I [1914 18]

EFFECTS OF DIRECT RULE IN TANGANYIKA.

- Many Africans were stripped off their powers and replaced by the harsh Akidas and Jumbes.
- Africans who were co-operative and loyal to the Germans were appointed as Akidas.
- Direct brewed wide spread rebellions as people rose up against the harsh Akidas and Jumbes E.g. Maji Maji revolt. Abushiri revolt and Hehe Rebellion.
- There was rise of African nationalism because many people started organizing themselves into revolutionary movements to struggle for independence.
- Heavy taxation was introduced e.g. hut tax of 3 rupees and taxes were brutally collected as the Germans tried to fully exploit Africans and maximize profits.
- Africans were forced to grow cash crops like cotton which annoyed Africans.
- Africans lost large chunks of land to the German settlers who introduced plantation farming.
- People including chiefs were brutalized and humiliated as they were publically flogged and beaten by the Harsh Akidas and Jumbes.

- African cultures and customs were eroded and abused by the Akidas e.g. they always raped women when their husbands were working on cotton farms and they would also enter mosques with dogs.
- Christianity was widely spread as traditional beliefs and islam greatly declined as a result of shrines being burnt and churches widely built German missionaries.
- There was heavy loss of lives and destruction of property as the Germans tried to suppress the many rebellions.
- Africans were forced to work for long hours on European farms and road works where they received little or no pay at all.
- Infrastructures were widely developed in Tanganyika to aid the exploitation of resources e.g. roads and railway lines were built.
- Famine broke out due to the unsettled life of the Africans and the German neglect of growing of food crops in favour of cash crops.
- African traders like the Nyamwezi were driven out of trade by the Germans who became the main trade controllers.
- Western civilization was promoted as a result of many schools that were constructed by the Germans.

Similarities

- In both the governor was answerable to the foreign secretary.
- Governor was on top.
- There was well structured and well organized political system.
- The governor was answerable to the foreign secretary.
- Colonies were divided into political units.
- Top positions were for the whites.
- Serious education was ignored.
- Infrastructural development.
- Exploitation of African resources.
- Forced labour.
- Plantation agriculture.
- Parliament[Legco/ governor's council]
- Law and order.
- Principle of effective occupation was followed.
- The government was in charge of collecting and managing taxes.

Differences between indirect and direct rule.

Indirect rule	Direct rule
Used by Britain	Used by Germany

Used in Uganda and Kenya	Used in Tanganyika
The colonial secretary based in London	The colonial secretary based in Berlin
Popularized by Lord Lugard	Popularized by Dr Carl Peters.
African chiefs were used	Were ignored
Based on the existing kingdoms and chiefdoms	Created their own administrative units
Was based on making the colony self reliant	Exploiting the colony
Limited colonial officers	Many colonial officers
Peaceful	forceful
Many administrative units	Few administrative units
Allowed opposition	Never permitted opposition.
African representation	Limited African representation
African leaders were maintained	Lost their powers
Was friendly	Harsh and hostile
Lower position were maintained for Africans	Lower positions were maintained for Akidas and Jumbes
Used collaborators	No collaborators
Based on local structure	Was an imported system
Legco	Council of governors

CHAPTER 02 THE COLONIAL ECONOMY IN EAST AFRICA

KEY WORDS

Administration

Agriculture

Colonial economy

Industry

Peasant system

Plantation

Railway

Subsistence

Transition

Transport etc.

By the end of the chapter learners should be able to;

a. Understand the economic situations in East Africa before and after the introduction of the colonial economy in East Africa.
b. Know the features of the colonial economy in East Africa.
c. Understand the reasons why the colonial administration encouraged both the peasant/subsistence and plantation farming in East Africa.
d. Understand why industries were established in colonial East Africa.
e. Know the impact of the development of transport system in colonial East Africa.
f. Understand the socio-economic and health problems faced by the East Africans during the colonial economy period.
g. Appreciate the impact of the colonial economy in East Africa.

Meaning of colonial economy

Colonial economy refers to the system of production and consumption which was introduced in the colonies by the colonialists.

This was aimed at fulfilling the economic demands of the colonial masters i.e. be able to get raw materials, market, areas for investment etc.

This economy involved setting up large plantations, communication and transport network, mining Centers, etc.

However, it is important to note that before the introduction of the colonial economy in East Africa, there were economic activities carried out in the different societies.

THE PRE-COLONIAL ECONOMY OF EAST AFRICA

Its sometimes referred to as the natural Economy.

Common activities of this economy included

1. Subsistence farming
2. Hunting
3. Fishing
4. Artisan industry e.g. iron working, pottery, basket waving
5. Artisan mining like salt mining
6. Pastoralism
   Add more activities

FEATURES OF PRE-COLONIAL ECONOMY

- The pre-colonial economy was characterized by subsistence production of food for survival not for commercial. At times food produced in excess would be shared with the neighbours.
- It was also communal based economy. Major asserts like land were communally owned under the custodianship if their ruler who distributed them.
- It was also characterized by barter trade, goods would be exchanged with goods or services for services. This enabled these communities to get what they did not have.
- It was also characterized by division of labour. Women did the domestic work like…………………………………while men engaged in hunting, fishing, iron working etc.
- These societies also depended largely on their own resources rather than external assistance. They were self-sustaining.
- Some societies practiced raiding as a key economic activity example in Uganda the Karamojong depended on raiding, the Masai , Galla etc.
- The kings and chiefs were the main controller of the major economic activities more especially in centralized societies. For example in Bunyoro, the Omukama controlled the ivory trade.
- In some societies there was class distribution of labour for example among the Bayankole, the Bairu carried out cultivation while the Bahima carried out pastoralism.
- The common /dominant economic activities of these communities included pastoralism, crop cultivation……………………………………etc.
- These communities lacked developed social-economic infrastructures like roads, industries etc. this must have limited their economic progress. However, in some societies like Buganda, there were developed roads which connected to different places from the capital.

ACTIVITY 1

a) Identify the advantages of the pre-colonial economy
b) Identify the factors that limited development in these communities

THE COLONIAL ECONOMY IN EAST AFRICA.

Its important to note that colonial economy was introduced in East Africa after the industrial revolution in Europe. This is because the industrial revolution led to the rise in the need for raw materials, market, areas for investment and cheap labour.

COMMON ACTIVITIES IN THIS ECONOMY INCLUDED

1) Plantation farming
2) Mining
3) Legitimate trade
4) Infrastructure
5) Manufacturing industries.

FEATURES OF COLONIAL ECONOMY IN EAST AFRICA

- It was characterized by setting up large plantations of cash crops like…………………………………which were used as raw materials for their home industries.
- These plantations were set up by the white settlers in some countries like Kenya while in some countries like Uganda were setup by the Africans (peasant agriculture).
- Africans were forced to work or labour on those plantations with a little pay and under poor working conditions.
- This economy was also characterized by land grabbing from the Africans. African fertile soils were grabbed and given to the Europeans to setup large plantations and Africans were sent into reserves. This was common in Kenya.
- The colonial economy was also characterized by heavy taxation of the Africans. Taxes were introduced as an incentive for African to work on top of rising enough income for colonial administration.
- Colonial economy was also completely industrialized in East Africa, this was largely because they wanted East Africa to provide raw material and markets for their finished commodities.
- Colonial masters established processing industries like cotton ginneries which were set up to reduce on the bulkiness of the raw materials.
- This economy was also characterized by the monetary system i.e. use of currency which replaced barter trade. This aimed at enabling Africans buy European goods meaningfully and also ease the introduction of wages and taxes.
- Construction of modern transport and communication line like railway lines more especially in areas with abundant resources for example…………………………... These lines eased the transportation of raw materials and goods. Areas that had nothing to offer the white man were left out for example……………...
- Establishment of social services like schools, health centers was also another feature of the colonial economy. The schools were meant to provide Africans with elementary skills

like messengers to easily work with the white man. While health centers were to reduce on the white man's burden of diseases.

- There was also development of the mining sector. This was developed because Europeans wanted minerals like gold, copper,
- This economy was also characterized by development of import and export sector. The major exports were the raw materials grown by the Africans and settlers while the imports were the finished commodities from the raw materials that were expensively sold to the Africans.

COMPLETE THE TABLE BELOW THAT HAS RAW MATERIALS TAKEN AND FINISHED GOODS BROUGHT BACK

Raw material produced by the Africa	Goods brought back by the Europeans
Cotton	
Tobacco	
Pyrethrum	
Coffee	
Tea	
Sisal	
Wheat	

PEASANT AGRICULTURE AND PLANTATION FARMING

Peasant agriculture was where small-scale farmers were allowed to grow cash crops in their land alongside their food crops using family labour and simple technology.

It was mainly practiced by the Africans.

It involved the growing of crops like coffee, cotton, cocoa etc.

This was common in Uganda where the British government discouraged settler settlement.

In Tanganyika, the natives were forced to setup farms for cash crops more especially cotton under what was called the compulsory cotton scheme.

However this was rejected by the natives and in 1907 the idea was dropped. When Britain took over the country after world war 1, the system was re-introduced but this time without force.

REASON WHY THE COLONIALISTS ENCOURAGED BOTH PEASANT AND PLANTATION FARMING

Peasant agriculture was encouraged because of the following.

- Some areas in East Africa were densely populated which made it very difficult for the colonialists to get land for plantation farming for example in central Uganda.
- The use of indirect rule more especially in centralized state also led to adoption of peasant farming since African kings were in charge of implementing and supervising.
- Some colonial officials (governors) preferred peasant farming to plantation faming hence encouraged it for example governor Hesketh Bell of Uganda and Donald Cameroon of Tanganyika.
- It was also cost effective since it depended on family labor and simple technology compared to plantation farming.
- In some areas, peasant agriculture was adopted because the colonial masters projected shortage of labor supply.
- The nature of climate, areas that had favorable climate colonialists encouraged plantation farming while in those with in unfavorable climate peasant farming was promoted.
- The nature of soils also determined the type of colonial agriculture i.e. areas with poor/infertile soils peasant farming was encouraged.
- The nature of crops to be grown
- In Tanganyika, peasant farming was encouraged because the British were just ruling the territory on behalf of the League of Nation hence couldn't setup long term investment.
- In some areas, Africans were already practicing cultivation hence could easily adopt cash crop growing.

ACTIVITY 1

Identify some of the features of pre-colonial economies that still exist in East African today/our communities today

In class, discuss the ''motion pre-colonial economy was better than today's economy''

LEAVE SPACE OF TWO PAGES

PLANTATION AGRICULTURE/FARMING

It's sometimes referred to as settler farming.

Plantation farming referred to the production of crops on a large scale for sale and employing a number of unskilled labourers.

They were large plantations with single crop and they were owned by the colonialists.

It was large scale cultivation of crops by mainly the settlers in order to meet the interests of the colonialist.

It was mainly practiced by the white settlers in Kenya (in the Kenyan highlands).

Plantation agriculture involved the cultivation of cash crops like tea, coffee, cotton, pyrethrum, sisal etc.

ACTIVITY

a) In groups, identify and discuss the characteristics/features of plantation agriculture/ farming **(leave space of one page)**
b) Identify the differences between the colonial economy and current economy of Uganda. **(leave space of one page**)
c) What were the benefits of the colonial economy to the Africans?
d) How did the colonial economy change the East African states?
e) Explain the possible factors that favoured the colonial economy in East Africa.

CASH CROPS THAT WERE DEVELOPED IN UGANDA

➢ In 1904 cotton growing was introduced and encouraged in Buganda, Bunyoro, and Busoga etc. by Kenneth Borup.
➢ Coffee was another crop developed in Uganda more especially in the central region.
➢ Tea was another crop developed and grown mainly in the central region.
➢ Tobacco was also development and mainly grown in the Northern parts of Uganda.

CASH CROP DEVELOPMENT IN KENYA

➢ **Tea;** tea was one of the first cash crops to be introduced in Kenya in 1904. It was first grown in Limuru and in 1925, Indians also set up new plantations in the region.
➢ Sisal; sisal was later introduced in Kenya from Tanzania and first planted near Thika in 1904 and by 1920 it was the second important cash crop in Kenya.
➢ Pyrethrum; it was also another cash crop introduced and it was particularly promoted by lord Delamere. The crop did not do well until pesticides were discovered in 1927.
➢ By 1935, the crop was doing well in Kenya and today, Kenya is one of the leading producers of pyrethrum.

- Wheat; wheat was another crop introduced in Kenya mainly by lord Delamere. Its major problem was a disease called rust and thus lord Delamere began experimenting on the rust resistant type of wheat that could be grown in the area.
- Coffee; it was another crop grown in Kenya and it was first introduced in 1889 by the Roman Catholic missionaries but it development was encouraged by lord Delamere.
- Coffee Association was formed in 1906 to encourage the growing of coffee and improve on its market.
- Coffee farms were established near Nairobi in 1910 due to the fact that coffee prices had risen considerably.
- Cotton was another cash crop that was grown in Kenya but it was not successful in the beginning. However in the Nyanza province high quality seeds were introduced to the growers and ginneries were put in place. Market was also found for the products.
- Other crops like sugarcanes, rubber and others were also introduced and vegetables like cabbages, carrots tomatoes, and cape goose berries were also grown.

CROPS THAT WERE DEVELOPED IN TANGANYIKA

The white settler developed various crops i.e. sisal, rubber, coffee, cotton and others.

- Sisal became the territory's second most valuable export.
- Coffee was first grown by the settlers in the Usambara areas in the 1890s but it failed because the plantations were too big and yet the soils were not ripe for the crop.
- However, when the railway was extended to Mosh in 1912, coffee became a success in Kilimanjaro areas grown by the Greek and Italian planters and some Chagga chiefs.
- Rubber was another crop developed by the whites. Rubber plantations were started in Tanganyika in Morogoro district and by 1912 rubber was the most valuable export.

Unfortunately, in 1913, the world price for rubber fell drastically and the crop declined in importance never to recover.

INDUSTRIALIZATION IN COLONIAL EAST AFRICA

Industrialization is the process by which an economy is transformed from primary being an agricultural one to one based on the manufactured goods.

It was introduced by the colonialists to process raw materials for export and promote legitimate trade.

It aimed at adding value to the already produced African agricultural products more especially before their export to western world.

A number of industries were established by the colonialists and these included; Kilembe copper mine in Kasese, copper smelting plant in Jinja among others.

Also cotton, coffee, textile and tobacco processing plants were setup allover East Africa.

Consumer industries were also established that specialized in food and beverages.

By 1930 Kenya had more industries than the rest of the East African countries like Uganda.

Kenya mainly produced beer, soap, cigarettes, building materials and canned (tinned) food.

Reasons why processing industries were established in colonial East Africa.

- To add value to the raw materials by reducing quantity and weight in order to make the exportation of raw materials easy.
- Industries were to encourage and keep East African states as producers of raw materials and consumers of European products.
- To create employment opportunities for the white population in East Africa especially in Kenya.
- To ensure efficient exploitation of African resources through the industries established in East Africa.
- To promote trade in East Africa.
- To provide market for their finished goods for African consumption for example clothes, shoes, pesticides among others.
- Etc.

Impact of industrialization in colonial East Africa

- It provided raw materials to the European industries in western world
- It promoted trade in East Africa
- It also promoted massive exploitation of African resources like copper, salt among others.
- It encouraged plantation farming in East Africa. a number of plantations like coffee, cotton, tobacco were setup in East Africa.
- It created employment opportunities for both Africans and Europeans who provided labour.
- It led to the collapse of African local industries like the craft industry.
- Etc.

Problems/challenges faced industrialization in colonial East Africa.

- Limited capital
- Inadequate man power

- Poorly developed infrastructures
- Poor/rudimentary technology
- Unskilled labor supply
- Conservativeness of the Africans
- Poor topography
- Shortage of raw materials to feed the industries
- Etc.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE TRANSPORT SYSTEM IN THE COLONIAL ECONOMY IN EAST AFRICA.

In order to develop economic activities in East Africa, colonial governments built infrastructures such as roads, railways and harbors.

Roads and railways were built from the coast to the interior of East Africa.

Transport was to connect strategic areas in the colonies and specifically those that had raw materials like minerals and agricultural products.

The railway to Kasese and Arua was to transport copper and cotton and tobacco in west Nile.

Road network system used in colonial East Africa.

In order to ease transportation of agricultural products and minerals, both tarmac and all weather roads were constructed by the colonial government.

In Kenya, the first road was built by William Mackinion of IBEACo from Mombasa to Kibwezi and it was known as the Mackinon road.

Later Muranga-Nyeri was constructed and Nakuru road was extended to Eldoret.

Other roads connected Nairobi and Kericho to facilitate tea trading.

In Uganda, sir Hesketh Bell developed a road construction program in Uganda.

During his time in office he constructed many all-weather roads linking important centers of southern Uganda.

By 1914 many bicycles, cars and Lorries had been imported to transport cash crops.

He also completed the first railway line.

The Busoga railway line stretched from Jinja to Kamuli and Kaliro via Namwendwa. This supported the cotton industry that was carried out over a wide range on the shores of Lake Victoria.

THE UGANDA RAILWAY

In order the Britain to make her presence in Uganda effective, it was essential a railway began as early as 1892 when the IBEACO inspected and surveyed the possibility of the railway.

This was done by JLR Macdonald. However, during the period of the IBEACO, the line did not take off because the company lacked capital and resources for such a project which was estimated to cost 2 million pounds.

In 1894, when Sir Gerald Portal declared Uganda a British protectorate, the railway became urgent for political and economic reasons.

Unfortunately, the matter was bitterly contested in the British parliament where some even dismissed it as the lunatic line.

However, the decision was later made on the 30th May 1896 the very first line was laid at Mombasa.

The Uganda railway is therefore a railway line that was built from Mombasa at the coast through kisumu to Kampala and extended to other parts of Uganda.

Construction began on 30 may1896 and George White House was the chief engineer and the Indian coolies provided the labour.

The work cost 8 million pounds higher than the 2 million pounds estimated by McDonald of the IBEACO.

Right from the start the railway was called Uganda Railway simply because the British wanted to effectively exploit the economic resources of Uganda and also develop it.

REASONS FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE UGANDA RAILWAY/WHY THE UGANDA RAILWAY WAS CONSTRUCTED

The Uganda railway was began in 1896 by the British from Mombasa and stopped at kisumu in 1901.Later other lines were also constructed.

A number of factors which are economic, political, social have been put together to explain why the Uganda railway was built. The most outstanding include the following:

- The railway was constructed mainly with the intention of developing Uganda economically and that's why it was called the Uganda railway.

- The need to ease transport; the railway was constructed because the British wanted to make transport in the interior, cheaper, easier and faster.
- The British desire for effective administration; the British built the Uganda railway to enable them effectively administer Uganda as this could enable the transportation of troops and administrators to the interior.
- The railway was constructed to help in the exploitation of resources in the region e.g minerals and agricultural resources that could be transported using the railway system.
- The railway was also to enable the cheap transportation of goods to and from the interior of East Africa. It would therefore open the interior for trade and commerce and also improve the transport system in general. It would in other wards help East Africa to trade with the outside world.
- The line was built to encourage cash crop growing like coffee, cotton and tea. This is why it was extended to only areas of agricultural potential.
- The need to link Uganda to the coast; The British believed that the construction of the railway would help to link Uganda to the coast since it was land locked.
- The need to improve communication; the railway was built to improve communication between Britain and East Africa and thus ensure proper coordination.
- The idea of the Berlin conference; It had been agreed at Berlin that colonialists were to develop infrastructure in their colonies so as to prove effective occupation. Hence the construction of the Uganda railway was necessary.
- The need to stop slave trade; The railway was to encourage the stopping of slave trade since it would discourage the use of porters and enable the people fighting the trade to get to various places easily.
- The need to promote legitimate trade; the railway was built to provide an alternative to other forms of trade. Britain had undergone the industrial revolution and therefore wanted to sell her goods and at the same time, East Africa was producing raw materials that were needed by the British industry.
- The 1890 Anglo German-Agreement; It is said that after the signing of the 1890 Anglo-German Agreement, the British had no fear of investing their capital in Uganda since the Germans recognized them as the undisputed owners of Uganda and Kenya.
- The need to promote missionary activity; the railway was also built to enable missionary work to continue in East Africa. It was built to be used by missionaries to access the interior and promote Christianity.
- The need to control the source of river Nile; the British who were already in Egypt wished to take control over the source of the Nile, thus there was need to gain access to Uganda through the railway in order to control the Nile.
- The line was also built because the IBEACO had recommended it. It had even surveyed its route, only that it did not have enough funds to construct it.

- It was also intended to make the British East African territory self-reliant and able to pay for its own administration. Indeed, the line would help in raising funds for colonial administration.
- The railway was built to fore stall other powers ie Egyptians and Khartoumers.
- The line was built to provide transport to armies and military personnel.

CHALLENGES/OBSTACLE/PROBLEMS ENCOUNTERED DURING THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE UGANDA RAILWAY

The construction of the railway faced political, social and economic problems.

The preliminary survey was done in 1892 by Captain JRL McDonald of the IBEACO. However, the construction of the Uganda railway did not take off until 30th May 1896. This was mainly due to the lack of enough capital for the project.

At the beginning, delays in the construction of the line were caused by the Mazrui uprising between 1895 and 1896.

- Limited labour force; there were no workers to build the railway. The kamba were not interested and therefore refused to participate in the construction. Thus the British were faced with inadequate labour supply. The few Africans who offered to work did not go beyond their home areas thus causing labour supply deficiency.
- Lack of skilled technical man power; the Africans who offered to work were unskilled and lacked technical knowledge in the construction therefore they had to bring Indian coolies from India and about 32,000 coolies and 5000 clerical staff were brought in. These however were very expensive.
- Unfortunately, the coolies were weak and unreliable thus causing labour inefficiency.
- Poor climate conditions; the railway constructors were also affected by the climatic conditions where some places were too dry and yet the railway had to pass through such areas like the dry waterless Taru desert.
- In other areas, there was excess rainfall and floods that washed away some lines thus causing delays.
- Long drought and famine; because of the drought, there was famine, starvation thus the British resorted to importation of food especially rice.
- Wild animals e.g. lions also caused many problems at Tsavo where the workers' camps were attacked and destroyed by lions that killed about 28 coolies and a dozen Africans until they were killed by Colonel Patterson.
- Tropical diseases; the workers and Europeans were attacked by various tropical diseases e.g malaria and sleeping sickness e.t.c
- Jiggers and ticks also attacked the workers they did not only lead to irritation but also death.

- Hostile tribes e.g. the Nandi who did not want strangers going through their land thus attacked the workers. They referred to the railway line as an iron snake which could not be allowed to go through their land as it represented European alienation and imperialism.
- Theft, the Nandi stole the railway equipment and telegraph wires and disappeared into the hills to make bracelets, necklaces and rails to make spears.
- The topography and relief caused endless problems; it was difficult to construct the railway through the highlands and the eastern bend of the rift valley which presented engineering problems because of the steep escarpment. Thus this caused delays and increased costs.
- Forests and Swamps: Forests which had to be cleared as well as rivers and swamps which had to be bridged also made the construction of the line difficult.
- There was also shortage of food and water that affected the health of the workers.
- There were also conflicts (wrangles) in the British parliament about the importance of the railway. They found it difficult to release the money because to them, the railway did not have any economic value hence causing delays.
- Poor accommodation; this caused insecurity because they were not sure of their protection from wild animals and harsh weather conditions.
- Inadequate communication and transport; There was inadequate communication and transport leading to delays in the arrival of materials thus causing a slowdown in the construction.
- Limited funds; during construction, funds were not sufficient causing delays and even work coming to a stand still for weeks.
- The line took more money than planned. Eventually by 1901, when construction was completely finished the financial expenses were much higher than the estimates e.g it cost 8 million pounds compared to the 2 million pounds that had been estimated.

IMPACTS/EFFECTS OF THE DEVELOPMENT OF TRANSPORT (UGANDA RAILWAY, ROADS AND HABORS) IN COLONIAL EAST AFRICA.

The effects of the Uganda railway were political, economic and social.

ECONOMIC EFFECTS

- The railway construction led to an increase in trade ie both international and local trade. It thus generated new economic and commercial opportunities.
- The railway led to the immigration of many Europeans and Asians who came in as business men shopkeepers etc. These came to play a dominant role in the economic development of the country.
- The Uganda railway made possible the export of cash crops especially cotton which was taken by the Europeans.

- The railway also led to increased growth of cash crops. This was because of easy transport which encouraged crops like cotton, coffee etc to be grown in large quantities. This made Uganda independent of the imperial grants in aids by 1915.
- The Uganda railway led to the general development of agriculture. Even the peasants picked on agriculture because of the assured market.
- Extension of the railway into Uganda led to the development of road network ie feeder roads. Deeper areas were linked to the railway by such roads.
- The railway led to the commercialization of the economy ie monetary system was introduced like the use of coins and paper money to ease commerce and trade.
- There was also the development of small scale industries in Uganda e.g cotton ginneries, copper smelting industries, coffee processing industries.
- The Uganda railway led to the development of taxes. Import and export duties were put in place and the revenue enabled the British to run their territory and the railway.
- The railway also led to rapid growth of urban centers due to the increased trading and an increase in missionary and settler activities.
- The stations along the railway line developed into prosperous towns e.g. Kisumu, Nairobi, Mombasa, Jinja, Kampala e.t.c
- The railway system played a part in the decision that Uganda's development would be through peasant agriculture.
- The railway line led to the imbalance of development. Areas that were served by the railway developed faster than those that did not have the railway.
- Transport and communication from the interior to the coast was eased and Uganda was therefore opened up for exploitation of natural resources.
- Transportation costs were generally reduced i.e transportation of cotton from Mombasa to Kisumu became quite cheap.

SOCIAL EFFECTS

- As a result of the construction of the railway, transportation inland was made easy, quick and cheaper.
- The railway widened employment opportunities for many people, some were employed as a local motive drivers, station managers, traffic officers while others were employed in the loading and offloading of goods.
- It led to improved standards of living people were able to access the goods that they did not have earlier on.
- The Uganda railway provided Uganda with a link to the coast and the outside world, hence improving communication.
- The construction of the Uganda railway confirmed Kenya as a settler colony. A number of Europeans settlers increased in Kenya thus leading to loss of land by the Africans.

- The railway also facilitated the effective abolition of slave trade and human porterage. It made slaves useless since they were no longer needed to carry commodities.
- An alternative trade i.e legitimate trade which involved the growing of cash crops was introduced.
- It also led to the displacement of many Africans e.g the Nandi were displaced as a result of the railway passing through their land.
- Western civilization was easily spread into the interior i.e there was an increased number of Christian missionaries who brought in education, built schools and hospitals and also spread Christianity.
- It was now easy to transport food to different parts of East Africa where there was shortage especially among the Kamba who had been hit by serious famine between 1898 and 1899 caused by locust invasion, drought and rinderpest.
- Africans acquired new skills as regards to railway construction. They learnt from the railway builders how to build the railway, how to arrange the wagons.
- There was loss of life, those who proved stubborn and refused the railway to pass through their land were killed e.g the Nandi and their leader Orkoiyot Koitalel.

POLITICAL EFFECTS

- The British confirmed their effective colonial administration over Kenya and Uganda hence leading to loss of independence. This was because the transportation of administration and troops became easy.
- In Kenya, the increased number of white settlers and Asian immigrants caused a lot of problems for the British administration as they ended up creating racial conflicts.
- The completion of the railway led to the transfer of the eastern province from Uganda to Kenya since this contained suitable land for white settlement. Thus it led to the re - drawing of political boundaries.
- It led to the transfer of Kenya's capital from Mombasa to Nairobi which was more central.
- The construction of the line led to nationalists movement (resistance) against Europeans such movements include the Nandi resistance.

Qtn. Explain problems facing transport industry in Uganda.

Suggest solutions to the above problems.

COLONIAL SOCIAL AND HEALTH SYSTEMS.

Before colonial education, Africans had their indigenous education called informal education which was practical. It was given by the elders in the community and it based on sex and age of the learner.

The health system in the pre-colonial East Africa involved the use of herbs to cure various diseases and it was also highly connected to their Religion i.e. African Traditional Religion (ATR).

Educational developments

Before the advent of colonialists, Africans had informal system of education but when colonialists came they introduced formal education championed by the Christian Missionaries.

Formal education is a system of education that involved a well-structured and systematic form of learning.

It was delivered to students by trained teachers, lecturers and tutors. It was classroom based and everything a student learnt was well planned and at the end of the cycle a learner was assessed.

Informal education is a type of education that allows one gain knowledge through several life experience. This knowledge can be obtained through interactions with our parents, elders in the community among others.

It helps one to attain skills of life that are important for survival. It doesn't involve theoretical knowledge of the books.

In Uganda a number of schools were established with the purpose of educating sons of the chiefs since 19th century.

Table showing schools established by Christian missionaries in Uganda.

Year	School	Purpose
1895	Mengo Senior School	To educate sons of chiefs
1902	Namilyango College	To teach natives how to read, write and arithmetics.
1905	Gayaza High School	To emphasize discipline and hard work among girls.
1906	King's College, Buddo	To provide education to the sons of chiefs
1906	St. Mary's College, Kisubi	To provide higher education for catholic youth in Buganda kingdom.
1914	Ngora High School	To educate high minded professionals.
1922	Makerere College	To train technical and medical personals

1926	Kampala Technical College and Teacher training schools in Kyambogo, Nkozi and Ndejje.	To prepare students for professional courses
1949	Makerere College became a Higher institution of Learning.	To provide higher education.

In Kenya, Western/formal education was started by three Germany missionaries i.e. Johann Kraft, Jacob Erhardt and Johannes Rebman.

In 1926 the colonial government built many primary schools and in 1927 the first secondary school was built.

These schools included; Alliance High School

Holy Christ College in Mangu, etc.

Health developments.

The colonialists paid more attention to health for East Africa because it was infested with diseases and pests which affected both Africans and Europeans. These included; small pox, malaria, sleeping sickness, etc.

The development of medical services in East Africa just like the education system was spearheaded by the Christian missionaries.

In 1907, the first hospital was built in Uganda by the CMS i.e. Mengo Hospital. Later more hospitals were setup by different missionary groups e.g. St. Francis Hospital Nsambya, Rubaga hospital etc.

In Kenya, various hospitals were also built such as Kijabe Mission Hospital, St. Mary's Mission Hospital, etc.

A number of medical stores were also established in different areas of Kenya like Lamu, Nairobi, Kisumu, etc.

In Tanzania, Ocean Road Hospital was established

REASONS FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF HEALTH FACILITIES/WHY WERE HEALTH FACILITIES BUILT IN COLONIAL EAST AFRICA.

- European administrators and other personnel wanted to be protected from tropical diseases such as malaria, small pox, sleeping sickness which had killed a number of people in East Africa.

- They wanted to expand market for their western medicine like quinine and others.
- Europeans needed African population to be healthy for efficient economic exploitation.
- Europeans wanted to train medical personnel to handle western medicine.
- They wanted to create employment opportunities for their people more especially in Kenya.
- Europeans aimed at destroying the African medication services like the use of herbs.
- Etc.

Impact of colonial health services

- It expanded the market of the western medical industries in Africa because Africans consumed medicine from Europe.
- They maintained the labour power for peasantry settler and mining sector of colonial economy
- Provided employment opportunities to their people in Africa.
- It improved on the health standards of the Africans.
- African herbs were almost replaced by the western medicines.
- It increased depletion of African resources
- It created classes during the colonial period i.e. the white settlers, civil servants and managers got high quality health services while Africans received poor health services.
- Etc.

SOCIAL AND HEALTH PROBLEMS/CHALLENGES FACED BY THE COLONIALISTS IN EAST AFRICA.

The colonialists faced a lot of challenges during the establishment of the colonial economy. The following were some of the social and health problems they faced;

- Many parents in East Africa were unwilling to take their children to schools established by the Europeans. This was because they doubted the intensions of the colonialists.
- Tropical diseases. The Europeans were attacked by tropical diseases like malaria, small pox, sleeping sickness etc and this worsened man power shortage.
- Wild animals. These animals especially lions at Tsavo National park that claimed lives of the Europeans and this affected their movements.
- Limited labor also was a challenge. This was due to unwillingness of Africans to help them and this slowed down their work.
- Hostile tribes. Some tribes resisted colonial development for example the Nandi, Massai among others.
- Language barrier was a challenge this was because the Europeans did not know the local languages used in East Africa and vice versa.

- Existence of rebellions for example the Maji Maji, Hehe among others which posed insecurity in East Africa hence hindering colonialists from administering East Africa.
- Poor communication and transport due to the existence poor road network which hindered their movement,
- Limited funds to facilitate the construction of more health facilities and education centers in east Africa.
- Etc.

NB. The above points can be used to answer questions about challenges of health facilities in colonial East Africa. And also challenges of education in colonial East Africa.

Impact of colonial economy in East Africa.

The colonial economy impacted East Africa socially, economically and politically both positively and negatively as analyzed below;

- It led to industrialization in East Africa. a number of processing industries were constructed by the Europeans during the colonial East Africa.
- It created employment opportunities for the people in East Africa. A lot of Africans got employed in industries, schools and hospitals as workers and this improved their living conditions.
- It led to developments in education sector this due to the construction of schools in colonial East Africa like Gayaza High school, Namilyango College, King's College Buddo etc.
- It also contributed to the improvements in the health service provision due to the construction of various Hospitals like Mengo hospital, Rubaga Hospital among others.
- It reduced on the levels of illiteracy in East Africa. This was due to the introduction of formal education.
- It led to the improvement in the infrastructures of East African countries due to the construction of roads, railways and habors.
- It improved on the living standards of the people in East Africa due to provision of education and health services,
- It encouraged the full utilization of East African resources due to the establishment of processing industries.
- It improved on the quality of agricultural outputs produced in East Africa, this was due to the existence of industries that added value on the agricultural outputs.
- It encouraged cash crop growing in East Africa. Crops like cotton, coffee, Tobacco were grown on a large scale in East Africa.

- It improved on trade due to the construction of roads and railways that provided smooth transportation of goods.
- It worsened discrimination in East Africa for example the whites and managers went to different schools and hospitals and also African children went to poor schools and hospitals.
- It also worsened to the exploitation of East African resources by the Europeans like copper, salt and others.
- It resulted into rebellions and resistances in different parts in East Africa for example the Nandi resistance, Maji Maji rebellion and others.
- Many East Africans lost large chunks of land to the colonial government to setup schools, hospitals and industries.
- It also led to the displacement of many Africans e.g the Nandi were displaced as a result of the railway passing through their land.
- Western civilization was easily spread into the interior i.e there was an increased number of Christian missionaries who brought in education, built schools and hospitals and also spread Christianity.
- It also led to development of towns like Kampala, Mombasa, Jinja, among others.

TOPIC 03: WORLD WAR S

SUB TOPIC: WORLD WAR ONE 1914-1918

KEY WORDS

War

Allies

Alliance

Triple

Coalition

Conflicts

Learning outcomes

The learners should be able to;

a) Know the meaning of world war one
b) Understand the major countries or powers involved in WW1
c) Know the reason why east African countries were involved in WW1
d) Understand how the events of WW1 influenced future history of east Africa
e) Appreciate the impact of world War one in east Africa.

Meaning of WW1,

World war one also known as the First World War was a global conflict that took place from 1914 to 1918 between the triple Entente led by France and triple alliance/ central powers led by Germany.

The war was sparked off by the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand of Austria-Hungary and his wife Sophie at Sarajevo in Serbia in 1914.

The First World War broke out on 28th July 1914 when Austria- Hungary declared war on Serbia. Soon all Europeans countries found themselves joining this war on the two different sides.

In east Africa the war was brutally fought in the Germany east Africa and later spread portions of Portuguese Mozambique, northern Rhodesia, British East Africa the Uganda protectorate and Belgium Congo. The campaign eventually ended in Germany east Africa in November 1917 when the Germans entered Portuguese Mozambique and continued the campaign living off Portuguese supplies.

Major countries or powers involved in WW1

Table showing the major powers,

Triple entente	Triple alliance/ Central powers
France	Germany
United Kingdom	Austria-Hungary
Russia	Ottoman Empire
Italy	Bulgaria
Japan	
USA	

Causes of World War one

 i. European Nationalism. The intense patriotism and desire for dominance fueled tensions among European powers leading to aggressive competition.
 ii. Militarism. Nations invested heavily in their military capabilities resulting in an arms race and atmosphere of readiness for war.
iii. Alliance system. There was an alliance i.e. the triple entente and triple alliance, formed between major European powers that escalated the large scale war.
 iv. Imperialism. Rivalries over colonial territories and resources caused tensions, suspicions and mistrust among European powers.

v.   The assassination of the Archduke Franz Ferdinand and his wife Sophie in 1914 (Sarajevo double murder). This was Austria-Hungarian heir and his death triggered a series of diplomatic cries and ultimatums.
vi.   Collapse of the European diplomacy. The collapse of Otto Von Bismarck left a leadership vacuum since there was no body to initiate peace resolutions among the great powers.
vii.   The Darwin's theory. The theory emphasized the survival for the fittest, as a result the great powers resorted to expansionist policies, arms race and alliance with one another.
viii.   Character of Emperor Kaiser William II. The president of Germany influenced the Austria-Hungary government to declare an ultimatum on Serbia and he also promised support to the Austria-Hungary government.
ix.   The Franco Prussian war of 1871. In this war France lost her two mineralized territories of Alsace and Lorraine.
x.   Role of the press. The mass media in Europe played a great role in exaggerating the information that promoted the arms race and alliance system.

Reasons why east Africa was involved in WWII

The War was caused by issues based in Europe like the arms race, spirit of nationalism, economic imperialism and the murder of the Austria-Hungary prince Franz Ferdinand and his wife Sophie.

Much as the war begun in Europe, it was inevitable that the overseas colonies of the two sides would be involved directly/indirectly e.g. Tanzania fought on the Germany side while Kenya and Uganda were on the British side.

During WW1 several east African countries participated in the conflict as part of the colonial forces of the European powers.

These countries included British East African present day Kenya, Uganda and Tanzania. Germany East African which included present day Tanzania, Rwanda and Burundi.

- Even before the war, some Africans were already serving in the colonial armies like the king's African Rifles (KAR). Definitely, the KAR had to fight in the interest of the colonial masters.
- Colonial interests and territorial ambitions of European powers. During this period European countries sought to expand their territories and control strategic territories for military, strategic and economic advantage.
- Control of trade routes and possessions. East Africa was critical region for trade routes and its ports were important for maritime commerce and naval operations.
- Access to resources. East Africa was rich in natural resources including minerals and agricultural products which European nations sought to exploit for economic interest.
- Strategic importance. East Africa's geographical location made it crucial area for controlling and influencing the surrounding areas.

- Alliance and entanglement. WW1 was a global conflict involving complex alliance to an extent that when the war broke out it dragged their colonies into the war as well.
- Military campaigns. Both the allies conducted military campaigns in east Africa to gain territorial advantages and influence and this led to recruitment of east Africans into the war.
- Indigenous involvement. This was where the indigenous people of east Africa were conscripted into the military and violence caused, by the conflict.
- There was a lot of suspicion and mistrust since the German and British colonial were adjacent to each other. Each country was suspicious that the other would soon attack her colonial interest nearby.
- Britain wanted to protect her possessions in India and therefore had to involve the Africans to prevent the Germans from taking over the colony.
- At the same time, the British and Germans wanted to protect their market in East African and therefore had to involve the Africans to help them.
- Some Africans also participated in the war for prestige and adventure. .
- The East Africans were provoked into war because Britain had attacked the Germans base in Tanganyika and this caused the Germans to react by getting GEA to fight back.
- Both countries wanted to ensure that the other was deprived of its sources and supplies and Africans had to be involved to ensure that each side won the war.

Impacts of World War 1 in East Africa.

- Economic disruption. The war disrupted trade and agricultural activities in east Africa affecting region's economy.
- Military campaigns. East Africa became a battle ground for German and British forces leading to intense fighting.
- Social and cultural disruption. The war resulted into social upheavals, displacements and migrations.
- Health issues. The war brought about health challenges in the region including the spread of diseases among troops e.g. the influenza of 1918.
- Legacy of violence. The war left a deep scar on east Africa leading to conflicts and tensions even after the war.
- Colonial shifts. After Germanys defeat the League of Nations granted Britain and Belgium control over Germany territories of Tanganyika and Rwanda.
- Labor exploitation. The war increased the demand for labor in east Africa leading to the forced recruitment of many Africans for various purposes like military services, etc.
- Rise of nationalism. The experience of WWI and the involvement of Africans sparked nationalist sentiments and movements laying ground for future independence.
- Loss of lives. The war resulted in loss of lives among soldiers and civilians in east Africa who had been recruited forcefully into the colonial army.

In conclusion WWI significantly altered the social, political and economic landscape of east Africa.

The key events of WWI that significantly influenced the future history of East Africa.

1. The east African campaign. The war saw a conflict between British and Germany forces in EA which shaped the regions political spectrum and social dynamics.
2. Militarization and forced recruitment. The colonial powers forcefully recruited Africans into the military leading to serious deaths and causalities. This experience had long term consequences on the perception of colonial rule and fueled nationalist sentiments.
3. Resource exploitation. The resource exploitation by the European powers left a great impact on the region's economy and the exploitation continued even after the war.
4. Territorial changes. After Germanys defeat the LON gave Germany east Africa territories to Britain and this solidified colonial control over the region and it influenced its future boundaries.
5. Nationalism and independence movements. The experience of the war fostered nationalistic sentiments and movements which later led to the rise of African nationalism.
6. Economic impact/ economic depression. The war disrupted trade and economic activities in east Africa causing food shortage and economic hardships. This strengthened the call for economic independence and local control over resources.
7. Social changes. Many communities were disrupted when people were uprooted from their homes which influenced future migration patterns and social dynamics in the region.
8. Trade decline. The chaotic situation which the war generated could not allow transaction to take place.
9. The war influenced settlers activities in east Africa. A large number of whites moved to east Africa especially from South Africa and other British colonies.

WORLD WARS AND THEIR IMPACT IN EAST AFRICA

SUB TOPIC: WORLD WAR II IN EAST AFRICA 1939-1945

Key words

Allied

Axis

Invasion

Recruit

Learning outcomes

The learners should be able to;

a) Understand the background for the outbreak of WWII
b) Understand reasons for east Africa's involvement in WWII
c) Know some of the east African personalities who were in WWII
d) Appreciate the role of east African states in WWII

e) Appreciate the impact of WWII towards the rise of independence in the east African states.

World War II was second war fought by almost all nations of the world, it started in Europe two camps headed by German and Britain.

By 1939 Europe was divided into antagonist camps i.e. Axis camp headed by Germany led by Adolf Hitler and the Allied camp headed by Britain led by Winston Churchill.

Other leaders during this war included;

1) Joseph Stalin of Russia
2) Franklin D Roosevelt of USA
3) Charles De Gaulle of France
4) Emperor Hirohito of Japan
5) Benito Mussolini of Italy

AXIS POWERS	ALLIED POWRES
Germany	Britain
Italy	France
Hungary	Poland
Romania	Netherlands
Bulgaria ETC	Denmark etc.
Russia	Belgium
And later Japan in 1941	Canada
	China etc.
	And later Russia (in 1941) and USA (in June 1941)

The war began in Europe on September 1st 1939 when Germany invaded Poland. Britain and France responded by declaring war on Germany on September 3rd 1939.

The war lasted nearly for six years and resulted in heavy losses for all the countries that were involved.

World War II ended in 1945 with the defeat of the axis powers.

World War II has been recorded in history as the deadliest and bloodiest war to date.

Why East Africa was involved in world war two?

World War II was second war fought by almost all nations of the world, it started in Europe two camps headed by German and Britain and soon East Africa got involved in the war mainly due to strategic and economic reason and the fact that it was still under colonial rule.

- East Africa was under colonial rule of some of the warlords. She was therefore under military delegation to support her colonial master (Britain).
- The Africans had been active in the World War 1 and therefore the Europeans wanted to use the people of East Africa also in World War II.

- The Germans in Tanganyika supported Hitler because they wanted their former colony to be returned to Germany and this necessitated the East African involvement since Britain had to get involved to make sure this did not happen.
- East Africa was located near Somalia, Eritrea & Ethiopia which areas were attacked by Italy which caused tension and suspicion to the British and thus East Africa had to get involved on the British side to protect British East Africa.
- Many more troops were brought to East Africa from Nigeria, South Africa, India & Ghana. This made East Africa to actively get involved in the war because the Common Wealth Countries had shown oneness.
- The British army also showed some weakness & this gave morale to the Italians to join the war. For this reason, the people of East Africa quickly got involved to help their colonial masters to eliminate the Italians.
- Several battalions of the king's African rifles were stationed on the Somalia border while other King African rifles went onto defend Madagascar.
- The German attack on India, threatened the British interests in India & for this reason, many East Africans were recruited to the tune of 30 battalion to defend India, Madagascar & Burma.
- It was also impossible for East Africa to remain neutral in a war that involved her colonial masters.
- The Germans in East Africa had conflicting opinions because their mother country German was fighting on one side and the colonizer on the other side. They wished to support their Hitler while others did not.
- East Africa also contributed large sums of money to the British to support the war.
- Later Japan joined the war on the German side and attacked the British interest in the Far East. This worried the British who wanted to protect the Indian Ocean and their interests in India.
- The King African rifles were then expanded. In fact 30 battalions were sent to go and defend the British interests in Far East. Thousands of Africans went to India, Burma and Madagascar.
- On 8th May 1945, German was utterly defeated and forced to surrender. This marked the end of the war.

MAIN EVENTS OF THE WORLD IN EAST AFRICA/ COURSE OF WORLD WAR IN EAST AFRICA

Just like the First World War, the Second World War started as a European / white man's war but ended up engulfing other continents including Africa.

- Many Africans were recruited to serve in colonial armies (British army) both in African and outside Africa more especially in the Middle and Far East.
- World war ii had several battle fields that were fought simultaneously at the same time.
- In East Africa, the battle was known as the East African campaign or the battle of Abyssinia.

- o It was mainly fought at the board of Somaliland and Kenya involving Eritrea, Ethiopia, Kenya, and Somalia.
- o In Somaliland, they were Italian who belonged to the axis power while in the British were in E ast Africa.
- o From 1940-1941, the British forces recruited troops from the British Commonwealth countries to fight against the Italians.
- o Many east Africans were recruited in to the kings Africa rifles, which was the British army in east Africa.
- o The Italians were in Abyssinia (present day Ethiopia), Eritrea and Somaliland and were fighting southwards to east Africa which was a British territory.
- o On 10 June 1940, East Africa Force under Major-General Douglas Dickinson was established for North-East Afric**a**, East Africa and British Central Africa.
- o 0n 13 June 1940, an Italian air raid took place on the RAF (kings Africa rifles) base at Wajir in Kenya and the air war continued until Italian forces were pushed back from Kenya and Sudan
- o The remnants of the Italian forces in the region surrendered after the Battle of Gondar in November 1941.
- o The East African campaign was the first Allied strategic victory in the war; few Italian forces escaped the region to be used in other campaigns.
- o The Italian defeat greatly eased the flow of supplies through the Red Sea to Egypt. Most of the Commonwealth forces were transferred to North Africa.

This battle was fought between June 1940-november 1941
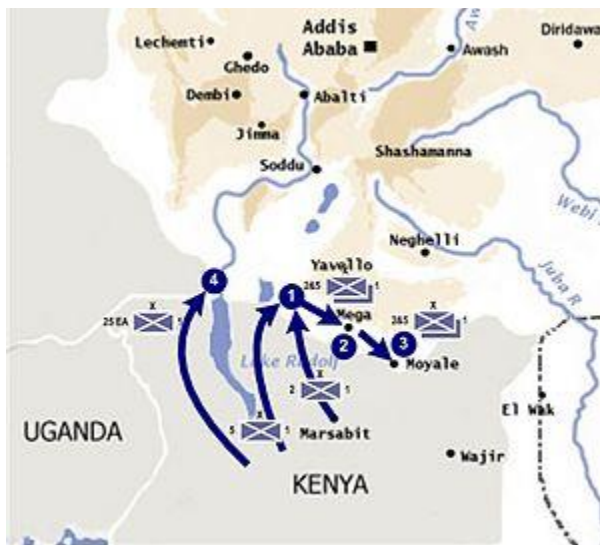
Key

EFFECTS OF THE SECOND WORLD WAR IN EAST AFRICA

World War II had political, social and economic effects the on people of East Africa and these were both positive and negative.

POSTIVE EFFECTS

- The demand for sisal on the international market was increased because it became a dominant item of trade since other agricultural products had become scarce.
- Japan captured Malaysia and its rubber production fluctuated and therefore Tanganyika was forced to increase rubber production.
- Africans for the 1st time in Kenya were encouraged to grow cash crops. This was not the case before the Second World War.
- They also started participating in trade which had been in the hands of Asians.
- Africans, who got involved in economic activities, became rich and started sponsoring nationalistic movements like the Mau Mau movement.
- The Second World War sowed the seeds of nationalism which seeds germinated when those who had gone to fight returned. They came back with new ideas and determined to fight colonial rule.
- There was an increased investment in Africa due to the increased number of whites who came to East Africa.
- The war led to the development of towns in east Africa due to the increased activities of the whites.
- There was also an economic boom in east Africa as Africans and whites engaged in trade.
- The Africans had learnt the weakness of the white man thus rising against them. They realized that the Europeans were not superior since they both suffered and died at battle field.
- Lack of employment among the ex-soldiers forced them to join the wing of nationalistic movement e.g. General China joined the Mau-Mau movement.
- On return, ex-soldiers created resettlement problems as many had nowhere to stay. Many wanted to stay in town and have white-collar jobs and on failing to get these jobs, they ended up joining the militant movement like Mau-Mau.
- People's attitude towards their African chiefs and administration changed. People started to resent them. This was due to the influx of new ideas of democracy, equality and liberty by the ex-soldiers.
- A body known as the United Nations Organization was formed to ensure peace on the globe in general and East Africa in particular.
- The war started the process of de-colonization i.e. the United Nations Organization started pressurizing countries like Britain for the independence of the people of East Africa.
- After the Second World War, Tanganyika became a trusteeship colony of the British under the United Nations provision but it was to govern itself after sometime.

- The British government directed technical schools and institutions to introduce and produce war equipment.
- Many Europeans communities began two changes their attitude towards the Africans for the better.
- The war forced the young Africans nationalist like the Jomo Kenyatta, Kwame, Nkrumah, and Namdi Azikiwe to call for the conference in London to challenge the colonial rule.

NEGATIVE EFFECTS

- ❖ The Germans in Tanganyika were arrested and imprisoned for supporting the return of the Tanganyika to German rule.
- ❖ Trade was disrupted and exports declined. East Africa suffered from external trade deficit.
- ❖ Due to the fact that all manpower was devoted to fighting, there was a decline in food production leading to famine. This led to importation of food
- ❖ Coffee and cotton growing declined. In fact Uganda's cotton and coffee growers had to be helped by the government when price fell too low.
- ❖ Many Africans lost their lives, were wounded and other crippled. It has been correctly pointed out that the people who died in Ethiopia, Somalia and Burma were mainly East Africans.
- ❖ Those who were killed during the war their bodies were never returned nor was any compensation given to their families.
- ❖
- ❖ Many people were forcefully recruited into the king's African rifles army and forced to go and fight in foreign lands like India, Burma etc.
- ❖ The population of men in East Africa greatly decreased because it was the men who were taken and therefore died at the battle fronts.
- ❖ The family system was also disrupted in that men were forced to abandon their families to go the war front. This caused misery and suffering as many of these families did not have support.
- ❖
- ❖ The British officials greatly pulled out of East Africa to go and fight in the war. This later however increased the gap between the Europeans and Africans.
- ❖
- ❖ The ex-soldiers came back and spread some venereal diseases especially STDs like syphilis, gonorrhea etc.
- ❖
- ❖ The Italians who were threatening the British in East Africa were finally defeated and forced out of East Africa
- ❖ Many people were imprisoned and arrested especially those in Tanganyika who tried to challenge the new British administration

Therefore, World War II far reaching political, economic and social effects and it laid a basis for African nationalism in East Africa.

ROLE OF EAST AFRICAN STATES IN WORLD WAR 11

All the three East African states participated in world war ii on the side of the British. They played the following roles

➢ The east African states provided human resource. Its estimated that 250,000 men participated in the war these included those that were already serving in the KAF and those that were forcefully recruited.

➢ East African countries provided large sums of money/ funds. The British increased the taxes in East Africa to meet the war expenditure.

➢ East African states also provided food more especially when the war became difficult.

➢ Some African also served as carriers during the war. The British forcefully recruited young energetic men and took them to carry military hardware.

➢ At the peak of the war, east African states also provided military hardware. The British instructed all technical schools to start producing military equipment to be used during the war.

➢ East Africa also supplied raw materials to European war industries during the war these included cotton, rubber sisal etc.

➢ East African state served as hiding places for the white during the war. This was evidenced by the increasing influx of white settler into Kenya.

➢ Some east African states served as military base for example at kilindini near Mombasa in Kenya for the allied forces

SOME AFRICAN PERSONALITIES WHO WERE INVOLVED IN WORLD WAR11

1) WARUHIU LTOTE (general China)
2) EUSEBIO MBIUKI
3) SERGANEANT KAGWA
4) MASULUM MUSEKER
5) SERGEANT LDI PENGO

HOW THE WAR AFFECTED THE GROWTH OF NATIONALISM IN EAST ARICA.

Many east Africans fought in the war and served in the Middle East Burma, India and Somalia etc. They fought side by side with Europeans, Indians and Arabs.

▪ The war exposed service men and better conditions, in Europe and Asia. They came back with a changed attitude towards colonialism and many and many ended forming associations to fight the misery, poverty and suffering that had been inflicted on them by the colonialists.

▪ The unemployment that resulted from the war forced the ex-service men to join militant groups like the Mau-Mau to fight the colonialists and improve their living conditions. They include people like Christopher Kagwa, Masulum Museker, Eusebio Mbiuki, ldi Pengo and Waruhiu Itote commonly known as general china.

▪ The myths that the white were naturally stronger than the Africans was cleared. They (ex-service men) had realized that the whites also died at the same rate as Africans and could flee the battle field. This encouraged them to fight for self-independence.

- The British colonial policy was affected. After the war, the British developed closer contacts with Africans and this encouraged the growth of nationalism .Their attitude was that soon Africans soon Africans would be independent.
- The war enabled Africans to expand their horizons and widen their thinking. They came back with ideals of liberty, human rights and democracy which they had not heard of before. This encouraged from the fight and achieve because virtues.
- The war created an economic force that speeded up the need of political power and economic independence. For example in Kenya the kikuyu and the Luo had broken into Asian shops and generated a lot of wealth out of this. This wealth was used to finance nationalistic movements.
- Africans after the war were allowed to participate in politics. Before this, politics had been exclusively for the whites more especially in kenya. They were now to participate in law making and even have representation in the Legislative council. This encouraged African political activism.
- The formation of the United Nations also encouraged the rise of nationalism. The United Nations was against colonialism and encouraged Africans to demand for self-rule.
- The war encouraged educated Africans like Jomo Kenyatta Dedan Kimathi Tom Mboya, Julius Nyerere, Apollo Milton Obote and others to organize and mobilize the masses to achieve self- rule. Many of them now knew what they wanted and it was quiet easy to demand and struggle for it.
- The war exposed the weakness of the whites this happened when the Africans witnessed the whites dying on battle front and shading blood and this gave them courage to fight for their independence.
- Africans acquired leadership skills during the war and they used these skills to lead liberation movements and in the formation of political parties.
- Africans acquired military skills. For example they learnt to operate the sophiscated modern weapons and when they return to Africa they were in position to hold and operate guns against the colonialists.
- The war exposed the Africans to white democracy for example some of them like Bildad Kagia of Kenya participated in the campaigns between the conservative and labor parties in Britain.
- The war showed the white man's conspiracy where by the Africans were taken to Europe to fight against Germany imperialism but not for the independence of African countries.

CHAPTER 4

STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE IN EAST AFRICA

Key words

Boycotts

Depriving

Independence

Nationalism

Personalities

Political parties

Struggle

Learning outcomes;

Learners should be able;

a) Understand the reasons for the rise of nationalism in Kenya, Uganda and Tanzania.
b) Know the various approaches used by people of east Africa to demand for their independence from colonial rule.
c) Appreciate the steps taken in the struggle for east African states independence.
d) Compare the Ugandan struggle for independence and that of east African states.
e) In this chapter, we are going to look at how Africans /East African countries regained their independence from the white man.
f) We shall look at the causes, challenges and results of struggle for independence.

Ask yourself the following questions;

1. Has anyone ever taken away your rights
2. Have you ever been forced to leave your home, land or family?
3. Has anyone ever forced you to work for someone
4. Have you ever been restricted from playing your favourite games etc.

If any of the above has ever happened to you, how did you react/what did you do to stop such a situation?

THE RISE OF NATIONALISM IN EAST AFRICA

Nationalism means the love for one's country/ a spirit of patriotism. It is the desire by a group of people to achieve political, economic and social independence.

Nationalism emerged in East Africa after world war11 between 1945 and 1960 and it was characterized by mass political awareness and formation of political movements.

The major nationalists included; Apollo Milton Obote, Mzee Jomo Kenyatta, Mwalimu Julius Nyerere, Dedan Kimathi, Odinga Oginga, Tom Mboya etc.

Independence was not something that was achieved overnight.

FACTORS FOR THE RISE OF NATIONALISM AND IT'S GROWTH (factors that led to growth of nationalism)

FACTORS THAT CONTRIBUTED TO THE RISE OF NATIONALISM IN EAST AFRICA

- World War II led to the rise of nationalism in East Africa because it encouraged Africans to form nationalistic movements like Mau-Mau in Kenya.
- The high levels of unemployment and poverty made Africans form mass political movements like Mau-Mau to demand for better conditions.
- The influence of Christian missionaries who always stressed equality of all men before God also encouraged Africans to rise up and fight for their rights.
- Missionary education produced elites like Jomo Kenyatta, Apollo Milton Obote and Julius Nyerere who led the independence struggles.
- The emergence of an educated class of Africans also speeded up the independence struggles because these educated Africans provided the leadership e.g. Jomo Kenyatta, Julius Nyerere.
- The granting of independence to Asian countries like India and Pakistan in 1947 aroused nationalistic feelings among the East Africans since they also felt that they should be independent.
- The development of national languages like Swahili for Tanganyika and English for Uganda and Kenya created unity among Africans and it solved the language problem.
- The spread of socialism and communism by USSR and China also led to the rise of nationalism in East Africa because these countries were supporters of anti-colonialism.
- The emergence of new superpowers like USA and Russia after World War 1 also led to the rise of nationalism because they always stressed decolonization of African countries.
- The growth of Pan Africanism also led to the rise of nationalism e.g. they brought the notion of 'Africa for Africans' which created unity amongst the Africans.
- The 1941 Atlantic Charter published by President Roosevelt (USA) and Premier Churchill of Britain called for people to form their own governments under which to live.
- The formation of cooperative movements also led to the rise of nationalism. They became a platform for people to air out their grievances against the colonial government.
- Colonialism had its own evils like forced labour, heavy taxation and land grabbing by the Europeans and these forced Africans to rise up against European rule.
- The independence of Ghana in 1957 also gave morale to other countries to fight for their independence.
- Increased urbanization forced many people to migrate from villages to towns which exposed these people to new ideas of liberty, and equality which forced to form political parties.
- Support from Africans in Diaspora (blacks who were living abroad) in USA, England. These gave support to fellow Africans at home to rise against European rule.
- The Influence of the 1952 Egyptian revolution; this revolution was spearheaded by Colonel Nasser and he influenced nationalists by giving support to movements like Mau-Mau.

- The formation of the United Nations in 1945 also led to the rise of Nationalism in East Africa. The organization had an anti-imperialism policy and encouraged Africans to rise against European rule.

PROBLEMS FACED BY EARLY NATIONALISTS
- Tribal differences greatly affected the independence struggles. E.g. in Uganda, the Baganda didn't want to unite with other tribes while in Kenya, KANU was accused of being a Kikuyu tribal grouping
- Differences in political ideologies also affected the work of early nationalists. E.g. in Kenya, KANU favoured a unitary gov't while KADU wanted a federal government.
- Differences on how to achieve independence also affected the work of early Nationalists. E.g in Kenya, the Mau-Mau people preferred violence and others peaceful means.
- Lack of a uniform language also affected the work of early nationalists e.g. in Uganda, other people hated Luganda because of the already elevated position of Buganda.
- The death of leaders of Nationalistic movements e.g. General China in Kenya. This created a lot of fear among the local people and it created a leadership vacuum.
- Religious differences also affected the nationalist struggles. These were created by the missionaries and they made it hard for people to unite.
- The inferiority complex among Africans also affected them i.e. many of them underrated themselves and thought that they couldn't defeat the white man.
- Lack of funds also hampered the work of the nationalists e.g. they could not have all the supplies needed like guns and ammunitions.
- Some Africans collaborated with the colonialists and these weakened the nationalists i.e. they saw no need of fighting the whites.
- There was a problem of foreign interference e.g. in Kenya, the Mau-Mau was crushed by a force flown in from Britain.
- The high levels of illiteracy among the East Africans made it difficult for the nationalists to explain to them the need for independence.
- The poor transport and communication networks in East Africa also proved a problem to the nationalists e.g. it was not easy to communicate with people in the villages.
- The nationalists in Kenya and Uganda mainly concentrated in urban areas and denied themselves support from the majority rural population.
- The British policy of divide and rule also undermined the work of the nationalists. It created tribal thinking among tribes and this affected the unity.
- There were also clashes between the different leaders of the various nationalistic movements and these wrangles reduced on their effectiveness.
- Lack of proper organization and planning also affected the work of nationalists e.g. the Mau-Mau didn't have a clear plan of attack against the British.

POLITICAL PARTIES IN EAST AFRICA
- A political party is an association of persons whose major aim is to acquire state power.
- In East Africa, parties formed included: Kenya African National Union (KANU), Kenya African Democratic Union (KADU), Tanganyika African National Union (TANU), Democratic Party (D.P) Uganda National Congress (UNC), and Uganda Peoples' Congress (UPC).
- Most of these parties were formed and dominated by educated Africans.

WHY WERE POLITICAL PARTIES FORMED?
- They were formed to fight for the independence of their respective countries.
- They were also formed to demand greater African representation on the Legislative council.
- Political parties wanted the extension of the voting franchise to the Africans since they had been denied the right to vote.
- The rise of Pan-Africanism also drove Africans to form political parties because they wanted to rule themselves.
- Political parties were also formed as a result of colonial rule and its evils like loss of land, forced labour, heavy taxation.
- They were also formed to fight against European exploitation of African resources like land, labour and minerals.
- The influence of the Second World War was also a factor in the formation of political parties as Africans who had fought in the war came back with the zeal to liberate fellow Africans.
- Political parties were formed to fight for the release of imprisoned political prisoners like KANU was partly formed to fight for the release of Mzee Jomo Kenyatta.
- Political parties were formed to act as vehicles (platforms or mouthpiece) for airing out African discontent against colonial rule.
- The high levels of poverty and unemployment also forced ex-servicemen to form political parties e.g. General China.
- The rise of African nationalism was also manifested (shown) through the formation of mass political parties.
- Political parties were also formed to fight the discriminatory tendencies of the whites e.g. in education, health and employment.
- Political parties were also formed to demand for the removal of restrictions on the cultivation of cash crops, trade and free movement.

THE ROLE/ACHIEVEMENTS OF POLITICAL PARTIES
- They contributed to the achievement of independence in their respective countries.
- Political parties fostered unity and brought different people and tribes together.
- They contributed to the freeing of political prisoners like Jomo Kenyatta by KANU.
- They enlightened and educated the masses about their rights in their respective countries.
- They led to the recognition of their countries nationally and internationally.
- Through boycotts, demonstrations and riots, they advocated for the participation of Africans in voting process.
- They advocated for the equality of all races and the establishment of multi-racial governments.
- They acted as platforms for explaining the colonial ills to the people especially in local languages that were understood by everyone.
- Political parties contributed greatly to the development of infrastructure like roads, schools and hospitals.
- As a result of their pressure, Africans were able to get white collar jobs.
- They contributed to the development of agriculture like the establishment of Busitema Agricultural College and Kibimba rice scheme in Uganda.

- They contributed to the attainment of republican status by the East African states e.g. Uganda in 1963 and Kenya in 1965.
- They led to the establishment of adult suffrage in East Africa.

PROBLEMS FACED BY THE POLITICAL PARTIES
- Tribal differences led to disunity which delayed independence e.g. D.P for Baganda and UPC for Northerners
- Differences in political ideologies also led to power struggles e.g. UPC could not have the same plan with DP on how to achieve independence.
- Differences in languages created the problem of language barrier i.e. Uganda lacked a national language which also created disunity.
- Religious differences created disunity e.g. DP for Catholics and UPC for Protestants.
- Imprisonment of Charismatic national leaders created power vacuum at the top.
- Differences on how to achieve independence e.g. some wanted force and some wanted diplomacy.
- Inferiority complex of Africans i.e. they underrated their potential to fight the whites.
- Lack of funds to sustain their programmes made it difficult to spread awareness among the masses.
- Foreign interferences e.g. political parties were always not allowed to freely carry out their work.
- Some Africans collaborated with colonialists which weakened the work of political parties.
- High level of illiteracy made it very difficult for the leaders to convince the local people.
- Poor transport and communication to effectively spread ideas countrywide.
- Lack of proper organization made it difficult to achieve independence quickly.
- Nationalists mainly concentrated in urban areas and neglected the majority rural population.
- British policy of divide and rule worsened the levels of tribalism and created tribal thinking.

The few educated Ugandans were comfortably employed in the gov't civil service and could not join the independence struggles.

STEPS/APPROACHES TAKEN IN THE STRUGGLE FOR EAST AFRICAN IDEPENDENCE

In east African colonies, modern nationalism or the struggle for independence begun to take shape after independence.

The steps used include;

1. Protests; which was the objection or disapproval to colonial policies. These were common in Uganda and Kenya.
2. Boycotts; this is where Africans refused to do what the colonial masters wanted for example refusal to work on the farms, in the mines, etc.
3. Strikes; these were raids or attacks that were made by the Africans against the colonial masters. This would be in reaction to low wages, poor working conditions etc.

4. Formation of political parties; this is where Africans mobilized themselves and formed platforms which were used to demand for independence. For example Kabaka Yekka, Uganda National Congress UNC, etc
5. Armed resistances; this is where African picked arms and fought the colonial masters such armed resistances included, Mau-mau. (Uprising, revolts

THE ROAD TO INDEPENDENCE IN EAST AFRICA
TANGANYIKA
➤ On 9th December 1961, Tanganyika became the first East African state to achieve independence.
➤ It was steered to independence through the efforts of Mwalimu Julius Kambarage Nyerere and Tanganyika African National Union (TANU).

Role played by Tanganyika African National Union (TANU)
- TANU was formed on 7th July 1954 in Dar-es-salaam.
- It replaced Tanganyika African Association (TAA).
- Dr. Julius Kambarage Nyerere assumed leadership of the party.
- The party made it clear that Tanganyika was an African country and therefore Africans had to have majority seats in government.
- The party opened up offices all over the Tanganyika which united the people.
- In 1954, a UN mission was sent to Tanganyika proposing a planned constitutional process towards independence.
- In 1955, Nyerere visited the UN in New York to explain TANU's aims and press for support.
- Nyerere and TANU received a lot of sympathy from the UN that was against colonialism in Africa.
- TANU successfully mobilized Tanganyikans for self rule in the next two years.
- In 1958, TANU won a landslide victory in the Legislative Council elections largely due to its multi-racial policy.
- The wide spread use of Kiswahili as a national language also made it easy for the party to build a huge following.
- TANU defeated its only rival the United Tanganyika Party (UTP) that was formed in 1956 by some members of the Legco.
- After suffering a heavy defeat, UTP was disbanded unconditionally and this increased TANU's power and credibility.
- TANU planned the composition of the Legco to speed up the independence of Tanganyika.
- In the August 1960 elections, TANU swept the polls winning seventy out of seventy one African seats.
- During the voting, TANU promised Tanganyikans self rule, safe guarding their interests and introduction of complete adult voting.
- On 1st May 1961, Tanganyika was granted internal self rule under Dr. Julius Nyerere.
- Nyerere became the first prime minister and therefore TANU provided the first leaders of Tanganyika.
- TANU africanised the civil service and introduced special training scheme to accelerate a changeover.

- On 9th December 1961, the Duke of Edinburgh handed total independence to Tanganyika under Nyerere.
- In 1963, Tanganyika became a one party state under TANU.

MWALIMU JULIUS KAMBARAGE NYERERE
- He was born in March 1922 at Butiama near the Eastern shores of Lake Victoria.
- He was born to Burito Nyerere who was a Zenaki chief.
- He went to Musoma for his primary and Tabora School for his secondary education.
- In 1943, he joined Makerere University College Kampala for a diploma in education.
- While at Makerere, he formed the Makerere Boys of Tanganyika, an association of all Tanzanians at Makerere.
- In 1945, he returned to Tanganyika to start a teaching career at St. Mary's Tabora- a Catholic mission school.
- In 1949, he went for further studies at the University of Edinburgh in Scotland and attained a Masters degree in history, economics and philosophy.
- While in Britain, he met various Pan-Africanists like Kwame Nkrumah and Jomo Kenyatta who encouraged him to liberate his people.
- In 1952, he returned to Tanganyika and was elected Secretary of Tanganyika African Peoples' Welfare Association.
- He also became an active member of Tanganyika African Association (TAA).
- In 1953, he was elected president of the Tanganyika African Association which he reorganized to form an effective organ in national politics.
- On 7th July 1954, TANU was formed at Dar-es-salaam to replace TAA and Nyerere was elected president of the new party.
- The party was broad in outlook and Nyerere made it clear that TANU was opposed to tribalism and aimed at uniting all Tanganyikans for independence.
- Nyerere's non –racial tendencies soon endeared him to the governor, Sir Richard Turnbull.
- The two became good friends and always sat together to discuss government problems.
- In 1954, he presented the African case for self rule to the United Nations visiting mission.
- In 1955, he visited the UN trusteeship committee demanding independence for Tanganyika.
- Still in 1955, he was elected to the Legco but resigned after two years accusing it of not having a serious programme as far as speeding up the independence of Tanganyika was concerned.
- In 1956, he went back to the UN trusteeship committee demanding for African independence.
- However, in 1957, his meetings became violent and were banned by the colonial government.
- In December 1957, he was elected president of the Legco in order to diffuse the conflicts that had risen between the government and TANU.
- In September 1958, he led TANU to sweeping victory in all the Legco elections defeating its major rival United Tanganyika Party (UTP).
- In his rule, he encouraged unity, non-racial politics, spirit of freedom and hard work ''Uhuru na Kazi''.
- In the August 1960 elections, he steered TANU to another landslide victory and it won seventy of all seventy one seats reserved for Africans in the Legco.

- On 1st May 1961, Tanganyika attained internal self rule and Dr. Julius Nyerere became the first prime minister.
- On 9th December 1962, Tanganyika got total independence from the British which the Duke of Edinburgh handed to Nyerere at Dar-es-salaam stadium.
- Nyerere became the first president of Tanzania.
- He retired from government service in 1985 and he died of Leukemia on 14th October 1999 at St. Thomas hospital in London.

WHY DID TANGANYIKA ATTAIN INDEPENDENCE EARLIER THAN UGANDA AND KENYA?
- Tanganyika was gifted with able leadership of Julius Nyerere who acted as a unifying factor.
- Nyerere's friendly relations with the governor Sir Richard Turnbull with whom they always discussed Tanganyika's problems.
- The presence of Kiswahili as a unifying language also speeded up independence because it fostered unity.
- Tanganyika was a mandated territory of the UN and was being looked after by the British yet UN was against colonialism.
- Tanganyika lacked tribal and regional parties like it was the case in Uganda and Kenya which also promoted unity.
- There were no settler demands in Tanganyika like it was in Kenya where the white settlers wanted a say in government affairs.
- The close links that existed between UN and TANU also speeded up her independence campaigns.
- Nyerere was never imprisoned or his party banned like Kenyatta and UNC were banned from politics at one time.
- TANU lacked a strong rival and therefore it had a strong following from all the people of Tanganyika.
- Nyerere came from the Zenaki tribe which was one of the smallest tribes in Tanganyika which never caused tribal conflicts and feuds.
- Trade unions in Tanganyika were very active and strong compared to those in Uganda and Kenya which speeded up their demands for independence.

UGANDA
➢ On 9th October 1962, Uganda attained total independence from the British.
➢ This was mainly due to the role played by Apollo Milton Obote.

Dr. Apollo Milton Obote
- He was born on 28th December 1924 at Akokoro village in Lango, northern Uganda.
- He was born to a local village chief called Stanley Opeta.
- He started his education at Lira Protestant School and then to Gulu High School and Busoga College, Mwiri.
- He then joined Makerere University College in 1948 for an Arts degree which he never completed.
- In 1949, Obote led a students' strike in his second year at the university and he was expelled for political activism.

- After his expulsion, Obote was also denied a Visa by the Colonial government to study abroad.
- He later joined a British Engineering and Construction firm called Mowlem construction Company based in Jinja.
- When the company transferred to Kabeta in Kenya, he followed it but left it for Standard Vacuum Oil Company.
- While in Kenya, he was inspired by members of Mau Mau like Jomo Kenyatta, General China (Waruhiu Itote) and Dedan Kimathi. He had studied with some of them at Makerere.
- He stayed in Kenya until 1957 and when he returned to Uganda he was appointed chairman of the Uganda National Congress (UNC) Lango branch.
- In 1958, he was elected to the Legco representing Lango and he came one of the vocal members on the council.
- At the same time, he befriended Ignatius Kangave Musaazi the leader of UNC and Musaazi appointed Obote as UNC representative in Mbale.
- Later, Obote sacked Musaazi for travelling to London without the consent of the party.
- As a result, UNC lost its popularity and Musaazi was exiled in Gulu and later London.
- Obote then befriended William K Nadiope, a member of the Legco who had formed the Uganda Peoples' Union (UPU).
- Nadiope always moved with and introduced Obote as a son of Busoga to the masses but this was a mistake because it weakened UPU.
- In 1959, there was a split in UNC and Obote led the anti-Buganda wing.
- In 1960, he was awarded a honorary degree of Law of Long Island University in U.S.A.
- On 9th March 1960, UPU merged with Obote's UNC wing to form the Uganda Peoples' Congress (UPC).
- Obote assumed leadership of the new party with John Kakonge as Secretary General.
- The party became more popular as more prominent people joined it e.g. Jaberi Bidandi Ssali, Ali Kirunda Kivejinja and Dani Wadada Nabudere.
- In the 1961 elections, Obote's UPC lost to Ben Kiwanuka's Democratic Party (DP).
- Kiwanuka became the leader of the Legco and Obote became leader of the opposition.
- In the Legco, Obote strongly demanded for an advance towards self rule.
- On 1st March 1961, Uganda became self governing.
- in the same year, Obote was among those who attended the London conference where he greatly supported Buganda's federal demands.
- He was so tactical that he even decided to marry a Muganda lady called Miria Kalule which made him a darling of the Baganda.
- In April 1962, elections were organized and UPC got 37, DP got 24 and Kabaka Yekka (KY) got 21 votes.
- Obote decided to ally with KY to form a government and this was a victory for Obote.
- On 9th October 1962, Uganda got her independence with Obote as the Prime Minister.
- On 10th October 2005, Obote died in a Johannesburg hospital.

KENYA
- On 12th December 1963, Kenya finally attained independence from the British.
- Over 250,000 people gathered at the Uhuru stadium to witness the occasion.

- It was steered to independence through the efforts of Mzee Jomo Kenyatta and Kenya African National Union (KANU).

ROLE PLAYED BY KANU TOWARDS THE INDEPENDENCE OF KENYA
- KANU was formed in March 1960 by mainly African leaders in the Legco.
- James Gichuru was the party chairman/president, Oginga Odinga as the vice president and Tom Mboya was the General Secretary.
- The party largely drew its support from the Kikuyu and Luo tribes.
- It strongly opposed KADU's federal system and campaigned for a strong central unitary government.
- The party sensitized the Kenyans about the need for independence.
- It worked as a mouth piece for the Africans to voice out their problems.
- In 1960, it won a landslide victory in the elections but refused to form a government until Jomo Kenyatta was released.
- It organized boycotts, riots and demonstrations that helped speed up the independence of Kenya.
- It weakened tribal interests by being a mass political party although some people accused it of having only Kikuyu and Luo in its ranks.
- KANU established ties with other political parties that were also fighting for independence like TANU in Tanganyika and CPP in Ghana.
- It condemned land grabbing and disrespect for African cultures.
- KANU won international sympathy, support and respect from all over the world.
- It was involved in the formation of Mau Mau to liberate Kenya.
- Using Mau Mau, it made Kenya ungovernable to the whites.
- Using the philosophy of Harambee, national unity was fostered.
- KANU groomed leaders who were instrumental in the fights for Kenya's independence e.g. General China.
- KANU participated in the constitutional process that led to Kenya's independence.
- On 12th December 1963, Kenya successfully attained independence with Kenyatta as the president.
- The party therefore provided the first leaders of Kenya and formed the first government in Kenya.

Mzee Jomo Kenyatta
- He was born in 1893 at Nsenda near Nairobi.
- His first name was Kamau, but between 1909 and 1914, he attended a Presbyterian Mission School where he was baptized Johnston Kamau Wa'Ngenyi.
- Between 1922 to 1928, Kenyatta worked as a water inspector for Nairobi municipality.
- During this period, he was an active member of a Kikuyu political organisation and he became the voice of the workers demanding for better wages and housing facilities.
- In 1928, he was elected Secretary General of the Kikuyu Central Association whose main aim was to recover land lost to white settlers.
- He also became the editor of the Kikuyu Language Journal called ''Muigi Thania'' (Unity).
- In 1929, he went to London as a representative of the Kikuyu Central Association and pleaded for the African loss of land to the colonial secretary. He returned to Kenya in 1930.

- In 1931, he left for England and studied anthropology at the London School of Economics.
- In 1945, he organized the Manchester Pan African Congress with Kwame Nkrumah, George Padmore and others.
- In July 1946, he returned to Kenya and he replaced James Gichuru as the leader of Kenya African Union (KAU), a party that demanded for more African representation on the Legco.
- He became an active member of Mau Mau and with General China, Dedan Kimathi and Tom Mboya as the leaders of the movement.
- During the same time, he also served as a principal of Githunguri Teacher Training College but his stay was short lived.
- He was sacked by the colonial government due to his growing popularity.
- Many KAU members were not impressed by Kenyatta's decision to support Mau Mau activities.
- In 1951, the party between split between the moderates and extremists who didn't believe in the activities of Mau Mau.
- Kenyatta stayed with the moderates because of the high respect he had earned himself and also stayed in contact with Mau Mau fighters.
- In the same year, Kenyatta presented a memorandum to the Colonial Secretary Griffith, containing African demand for self rule.
- In 1953, he was arrested on suspicion that he was the real power behind the Mau Mau guerilla activities.
- He was sentenced to seven years in prison with other leaders e.g. General China and Dedan Kimathi.
- In 1960, KANU was formed by African leaders in the Legco and they elected Kenyatta as president while still in prison.
- In 1961, he was released from prison and he assumed leadership of KANU.
- He was accused by some party members of being too town centered, radical and making KANU a tribal grouping of only Kikuyu and Luo.
- This led to the formation of a new party called KADU (Kenya African Democratic Union).
- Kenyatta tried to reconcile KADU and KANU but his attempts failed.
- In January 1962, he was elected to the Legco and during general elections, KANU won with an over whelming majority.
- In February 1962, Kenyatta attended the second Lancaster House Conference that was called to draw up a constitution for Kenya.
- In May 1963, elections were held and KANU won with eighty two seats and its rival KADU got forty one seats.
- On 1st June 1963, Kenya attained self rule and Kenyatta became prime minister.
- He chose all his ministers from all races and always stressed African unity.
- On 12th December 1963, Kenya achieved total independence at Uhuru stadium.
- Prince Philip handed over the reigns of power to Jomo Kenyatta who therefore became the first President of Kenya.
- In 1978, Kenyatta died.
- He was popularly known as ''Mzee'' a Swahili word for old man.

HIGHLIGHT THE DIFFERENCES AND SIMILARITIES IN THE INDEPENDENCE STRUGGLE OF THE THREE EAST AFRICAN COUNTRIES

Differences

Compare and contrast Uganda's struggle for independence with that of Kenya **(leave 10 lines)**

What is the difference between the struggle for independence and rebellion? (Leave 5 lines)

How did Uganda gain her independence? Leave some space

In the table below, fill in the nationalists according to the countries

Uganda	Kenya	Tanganyika

Complete the table between

East African state	Colonial power	Date of independence	Personality/personalities

CHAPTER 05: POST INDEPENDENCE SOCIO-ECONOMIC CHALLENGES IN EAST AFRICE

KEY WORDS

Assassin

Commoner

Debt

Dependency

Export

Federal

Genocide

Import.

By the end of this chapter, learners should be able to;

    a. Know the various European states that passed on independence to African leaders

    b. Understand the socio economic challenges faced by East African states after independence.

European states that granted independence to African leaders

A table showing the European states that granted independence to African leaders

African country	European state	African leader
Uganda	Britain	Apollo Milton Obote and Kabaka Muteesa II
Kenya	Britain	Jomo Kenyatta
Tanzania	Britain	Mwalimu Julius Kambarage Nyerere
Ghana	Britain	Dr. Kwame Nkurumah
Algeria	France	Ahamed Ben Bella
Egypt	Britain	King Farouk
Libya	Britain and France	King Idris
South Africa	Britain	Nelson Mandela Madiba
Angola	Portugal	Augustino Neto
Zimbabwe etc.	Britain	Robert Mugabe

Post-independence socio economic challenges faced by East African states

The majority of East African states have several and endless problems and difficulties. The problems being faced by these states include the following;

- Corruption
- Poverty
- Unemployment
- Overpopulation
- Political instability
- Military coup
- Famine
- Refugee crisis
- Rural urban migration
- Etc.

Below is a deeper analysis of the socio-economic and political challenges that the post-independence East African states have continued to face and the suggested solutions to these crisis.

FAMINE

Famine is a condition characterized by lack of food for a long period of time.

This can be as a result of changes in weather, political instability that can result into abandoning of agriculture hence limited or no agriculture output.

The following solution are being suggested; -

- Research into disease resistant breeds should be encouraged by all governments in East Africa. All regions should establish a consolidation stand on food production and preservation in the region if famine is to be reduced and ended in the long run.
- East African governments should design population policies that will reduce the gap between rapid population increase and low rates of increased food production.
- Land under food production should be expanded; East Africa still has large areas of land in the region. These include forests, swamps, marshes and other Wetlands.

- Measures should be taken to maximize the effects of pests and diseases plus animal parasites on food and quality in East Africa.

- Land reforms should be undertaken to ensure that land is evenly distributed between the Africans. Poor land policies that enhance the problem of absentee landlords should be abolished.

- Tradition methods of processing meat, fish and dairy products need to be supplemented with modern storage facilities and preservation techniques which can help in preserving both traditional foods like fish and meat and the non-traditional foods like fruits, vegetables, cereals.

- Since most of the agriculture is done in the country side, farmers should form cooperatives so as to access government funding,

- The government should provide the farmers with improved seeds, agricultural machinery and intermediate technology.

- Cross breeds should be extended to the pastoral areas so as to increase on the production of animal foods.

- Besides cattle rearing, the pastoral areas should also engage in crop growing to increase food security in case of drought.

- Small scale irrigation should be adopted to reduce the effect of drought on to the crop performance. These crops if managed by farmers can help farmers even those in dry areas to raise crops all the year round.

- Sensitization should be carried out on how fertilizers and new seed varieties are used to avoid crops failure amongst the farmers.

- More emphasis should be put on growing food crops than the cash crops since some food crops like fruits can be sold for money besides providing food. Fish farming also generates food and income at the same time.

- The rampant problem of corruption should be fought. A lot of funds are annually lost due to corruption. In Uganda for instance it is estimated that about 500 billion shillings is lost annually due to corruption. This money if well spent would do much to improve a lot of farmers.

- East African farmers should strengthen their disaster preparedness scheme so that there is quick response to farmer's needs. Attempts should be made to assist farmers to get back to their feet in case of disaster like floods, droughts etc.

- The need to ensure political stability in the region. All these recommendations may not be successful unless leaders ensure good planning and political stability in East Africa.

- Education should be given to the youth to enable them change their attitude towards agriculture so that they can also carry out farming other than migrating to town where their productivity cannot be put to good use.

- Agricultural extension, workers should be strategically positioned in all farming areas to help farmers address the new challenges in agriculture.

- Through education and sensitization. East Africans should be encouraged to make use of food source which they have not been accustomed to due to their culture beliefs or ignorance

- East African should carry out a blue revolution to match the green revolution in order to increase the yields from water bodies, coastal swamps and some of the wetlands be used for fish farming at a very low cost.

- East African countries should stop depending on food aid from western states and concentrate on producing their own food.

THE PROBLEM OF POLITICAL INSTABILITY (POWER WRANGELS) IN EAST AFRICA

Power wrangles refers to the struggle for power or wrangles that undermine the stability of a country. These episodes may ignite civil wars, terrorism, military coups and many others. Political instability (power wrangles) has been witnessed in many East African countries include Uganda, Kenya, Rwanda, Burundi, and Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC) to mention but a few.

Causes of political instability and power wrangle in east Africa.

- Tribalism, nepotism and regionalism have been responsible for power struggle and political instability.

- Human rights abuse especially against those with rebellious views orchestrates political instability. Previous leaders like Obote and Amin of Uganda are accused of being notorious for violating human rights.

- Dictatorship has been responsible for power wrangles and political instabilities in East Africa. Many African leaders have turned themselves into dictators; as a result, the pro-democracy group take up arms to get rid of them, hence political instability.

- The differences in political ideology and philosophy have been responsible for political instability. Mobutu staged a coup against Lumumba accusing the leader of being a socialist, Obote's 'move to the left' led to a coup in 1971.

- The influence of powerful nations has been responsible for power struggle in east Africa. It's believed that Obote's overthrow of 1971 was supported by Britain.

- The failure of peaceful means to change the government is another factor. Museveni went to the bush in 1980 partly because of that.

- In some East African countries, rigging of elections has led to instabilities and power wrangles. In Uganda the rigged 1980 elections led to five-year bush war led by the National Resistance Movement/Army led by Gen Yoweri Kaguta Museveni.

- The unpatriotic and selfish nature of some leaders has led to the power struggle. Joseph Kony in Uganda and some allied democratic forces members in DRC waged senseless wars against their mother lands.

- The differences in religions and the inabilities of leaders to deal with this is another factor. For instance, Christian south Sudanese resented Islamic low imposed on them by the Islamic North of the country.

- Unequal distribution and sharing of the national resources have been responsible for the political instabilities. In Uganda, Amin staged the coup alleging that the Langis were benefiting more from Obote's government.

- The desire to protect their resources from being shared by the whole country has been responsible for the power wrangles in East Africa.

- The greed for power and personal ambitions of some leaders has led to power wrangles. Individuals have plugged their countries into instabilities because of their greed for power. Mobutu and Amin's greed for power led to the 1965 and 1971 coup in Zaire and Uganda respectively.

- The economic problem like inflation and unemployment led to instabilities in some countries in east African states. High unemployment rate corrodes the standards of living and leads to misery.

- The influence of some African countries has led to political instability. Some East African countries supported the RPF to fight Rwanda, Rwanda supported Batwala Nkunda to fight in Congo and Uganda supported Wamba Día Wamba to fight in Congo.

- Lack of regional balance in development explains the political instability and power wrangles in East Africa. For instance, the people of Darfur in western sudan waged a civil war citing regional imbalances as one of their prime grievances.

THE EFFECTS OF POLITICAL INSTABILITIES IN EAST AFRICA.

- Power wrangles have exposed people to famine as agricultural activities are disrupted. This was mainly in Burundi and sudan.

- They led to poor standards of living in war-ravaged areas and refugee camps e.g. in northern Uganda, Darfur, Eastern Congo.

- Led to loss of lives e.g. an estimated 800,000 Rwandese lost their lives during 1990 to 1994 genocide.

- They led to un told suffering and misery. Thousands have been maimed in the civil wars in northern Uganda, Rwanda and Darfur.

- They have promoted immoral acts like raping of women and girls in Uganda, Kenya and Congo.

- Civil wars have brought hatred in African countries e.g. people of central Uganda developed hatred against northern Uganda accusing them of committing atrocities against them during Obote's reign.

- Diseases like cholera and dysentery have been a common phenomenon in refugee camps in Somalia, northern Uganda.

- A lot of property has been destroyed e.g. crops, animals, and buildings and cars have been destroyed in Bujumbura, northern Uganda.

- Power wrangles have led to refugee crisis in several African states e.g. millions of Rwandans fled to Uganda and Somalia wars have led to an influx of refugees in Kenya.

- Led to economic retardation in northern Uganda and Eastern Congo, these wars left them behind in terms of infrastructures and education.

- Led to rural- urban migration because civilian feels that urban areas are safer than rural area.

- Instabilities have led to creation of new states e.g south sudan created in July 2021.

- Political instabilities have produced democratic governments, stability and development in some countries.

- They have led to displacement of people from their homes and made them internally displaced.

- They have created socially deprived groups of people e.g orphans and widows.

- They have exposed the weakness of East African Community (EAC) and international organizations and institutions.

THE REFUGEE PROBLEMS (CRISIS) IN EAST AFRICA

- Refugees are people who have been forced to leave their homes or countries. Such people can be internally displaced persons or refugees within own country.

- The existence of million refugees in East Africa as early as 1965 has been a result of East African leaders.

CAUSES OF REFUGEE CRISIS IN EAST AFRICA

- The tribal conflicts and ethnic violence have been responsible for refugee crisis i.e tribal conflicts over grazing land, water and political dominance. E.g. clashes between Luo and Kalenjin, kikuyu and Luo after the December 2007.

- The constant civil wars in East Africa have been responsible refugee crisis e.g., Uganda 1981-986 Bush war.

- The problem of famine in East Africa, during this period thousands of nationals leave their homes and flee to neighboring countries.

- The religious persecutions, for instance the religious conflicts between Khartoum and south sudan led to an influx of refugees in Uganda.

- The oppressive cultural practices e.g., female genital mutilation has forced many girls to flee before it is done.

- The outbreak of boarder and inter-state conflicts, several East African states have disputed boarders.

- The desire to work abroad e.g., many young African leave their countries for Europe, Australia, and U.S.A as refugees in order to be allowed to live and work in those countries.

- The desire to flee from justice is responsible for refugee crisis in East Africa. In Uganda colonel Samson Mande escaped from jail and sought refugee status in Europe.

- The occurrence of military coups explains the phenomenon of refugee crisis in East Africa.

- The occurrence of natural calamities like land slides and floods has led to refugee crisis e,g thousands of Ugandans fled the astern district of Bududa in 2010 following devasting land slides that killed over 300 people.

- The so-called liberation wars which were conducted by liberation movements in East Africa against the dictatorial regimes brought about refugee crisis.

- Oppressive and autocratic regimes in East Africa have created refugee problems in East Africa. E.g. Amin's dictatorial regime forced many elites to become refugees in Kenya and Tanzania.

EFFECTS OF AFRICA'S REFUGEE CRISIS

- The tarnishing international image of the countries of origin this has happened to the democratic republic of Congo and sudan.

- It may lead to an undesirable competition for resources especially in the host countries.

- Refugee crisis may necessitate the involvement of the international community in the affairs of the host country.

- It has led to creation of refugee camps.

- The refugees tend to interfere in the affairs of the host country e.g Rwandan refugee in Uganda joined the NRA rebels of Yoweri Museveni between 1981 and 1986 to over throw Obote's government.

- It has led to occurrence of deaths of refugees due to unhealthy conditions in refugee camps.

- It has worsened the problem of famine especially in the host countries.

- The refugee problem has provided recruits for rebels e.g Uganda refugees in Kenya and Tanzania were recruited by FRONASA of Museveni and kimosi malum of Obote to over throw Amin in 1979.

- It has led to shame and loss of dignity i.e parents often sleep with their teenage children in the crowded camps.

- The refugee problem separates relatives and splits relatives thousands of people flee desperately during rebel attacks.

- The loss of national identity when they mix with population of the host country they are not accepted by the society as nationals.

- The refugees suffer from rampant sexual abuse, while in camps refugees are defenseless against rape, defilement, sodomy.

- It has led to wide spread of poverty among the refugee because millions of refugees do not carry out productive activities.

- It has led to improvement of international image of the host countries i.e Uganda is praised for being hospitable host for Congolese and Rwandese refugees.

- The creation of social infrastructure to accommodate and meet the interests of refugees.

- It has led to creation of numerous non-government bodies of refugee crisis.

- It has led to deteriorating diplomatic relations among countries because of hosted refugees are wanted suspected criminals in their mother countries.

- In conclusion the effect are political, social and economic effects.

THE PROBLEM OF POVERTY IN EAST AFRICA.

Poverty refers to the inability of individuals, families, communities or nations to afford the basic needs of life. These include food, shelter, and medical care.

CAUSE OF POVERTY IN EAST AFRICA.

- The poor performance of the agricultural sector on which the majority of the East Africans depend.
- The low rate of savings by the East Africans and therefore lack of investments has made poverty inevitable.
- The problem of environmental degradation and other human activities have escalated poverty.
- The high levels of illiteracy have been responsible for the poverty levels in East Africa.
- The poor education system and the poorly planned colonial curriculum has created poverty in many East Africa countries.
- The limited resource endowment in some East African states has caused poverty.
- The high number of unproductive people who contribute nothing or little to economic development has led to poverty.
- The problem of natural calamities and disasters have been responsible for poverty in East Africa.
- The unpatriotic middle class in East Africa who care less for their countries have led to poverty.
- The rapid population in East African countries like Uganda and Rwanda moreover on limited resources.
- The rampant civil wars and political instabilities in East Africa have caused poverty in the region.
- The over exploitation of resources during the colonial period has led to poverty.
- The poor health in East Africa states has made poverty real e.g Aids scourge in Uganda takes its toll on the population.

- High un employment and very low pay for the few employed youths who have not engaged in productive activities.

- The under developed science and technology and lack of capital

- The poor planning and weak administration has resulted into poverty.

- The un fair terms of trade from which many East African countries suffer has led to poverty.

- The legacy of pre-colonial slave trade problem has contributed to poverty.it was recovered over 15 million Africans were sold into slave trade.

-   The problem of rampant corruption in East Africa has been responsible for wide spread of poverty.

EFFECTS OF POVERTY IN EAST AFRICA

- It has led to civil wars and political instabilities as communities accuses others who are in government of keeping them in poverty.

- It has promoted neo-colonialism i.e. some countries are forced to depend on the rich countries of Europe.

- It has increased support for and engineered military coups in Africa.

- It has led to school drop outs. many families have failed to pay fees for their children.

- Poverty has left women at lower ranks of social ladder. Due to unemployment opportunities.

- It has worsened the problem of corruption, the few poor people who get job indulge in swindling public money.

- It has led to low standards of living in term of poor accommodation, feeding and health.

- It has contributed to underdevelopment of the continent as there is little investment in developing projects.

- Poverty is behind the un-African practices like prostitution and homosexuality.

UNEMPLOYMENT PROBLEM IN THE EAST AFRICAN STATES

Unemployment is a situation where people, who are willing, qualified and able to work, can't find jobs.

When people are willing to work at the ongoing wage rate for their skills but they are unable to find a job, it is termed as involuntary unemployment.

Types of unemployment

CAUSES OF UNEMPLOYMENT IN EAST AFRICA

- Poor land tenure system a few people own large chunks of land while the majority are either tenants or landless which has resulted into underemployment and unemployment.
- Political instability in some parts of East Africa discourages public and private investment because the investors have that fear of losing their property and life. Due to low investment, the investors demand for less labour hence creating unemployment.
- Declining demand for goods and services the demand for labour is derived from the demand for the commodity which that labour produces.
  A fall in demand for commodities forces producers to reduce output and eventually they reduce the number of workers. This creates loss of jobs hence unemployment.
- Ignorance of people about the availability of jobs some people have remained unemployed because they do not know where to apply for employment. This ignorance arises due to limited advertisement of job opportunities.
- Shortage of co-operant factors such as capital, land and entrepreneurship. The level of production remains low and consequently fewer jobs are created. This brings about unemployment in Uganda.
- Seasonal changes especially in agriculture, the seasonal pattern of work in some sectors renders some people seasonally unemployed. For example in the agricultural sector, farmers are unemployed between harvesting and planting season as well as during unfavorable natural conditions like floods, drought, etc.
- Rural urban migration, due to rural urban wage gap and other push and pull factors, most people move from rural areas to urban areas primarily in search for better wage employment opportunities.
- Rapid population growth rate compared to employment creation, the population growth rate in Uganda is higher than the rate at which jobs are being created. This leads to excess labor supply relative to the available jobs hence creating unemployment in Uganda.

- Discrimination in the labour market based on race, sex, tribe, religion age, etc.
  There are people who are not recruited for employment in certain organizations because of not meeting certain specifications set by employers.

- Use of inappropriate technology, Uganda being a labour surplus economy, the use of capital intensive technology by some industries reduces the demand for labour hence unemployment.

- Poor infrastructure, the basic infrastructure like roads is poor which has hindered producers to transport their goods to markets. This has discouraged further investment and production. As a result few jobs have been created for the people hence an increase in unemployment.

- Poor education system, Uganda's education system is theoretical in nature and thus prepares students to be job seekers rather than being job creators.

- Structural Adjustment Programmes (SAPs) implemented in Uganda like laying off civil servants, Uganda has implemented and still implementing Structural Adjustment Programmes of I.M.F and World Bank which involve reducing the number of civil servants in government ministries and departments. This has led o loss of jobs hence creating unemployment in the country.

- Mental and physical disabilities, People with such disabilities may fail to be placed in certain jobs even if they existed. For example, a limbless woman cannot be a receptionist or a security guard. This results into residual unemployment, among others.

- Short-run immobility of labour, some people lose jobs but it takes them some time before they get new jobs. This creates unemployment in the short-run before they get employed in new or alternative jobs hence causing frictional unemployment.

MEASURES TO REDUCE UNEMPLOYMENT/STEPS BEING TAKEN TO REDUCE UNEMPLOYMENT/ INCREASE EMPLOYMENT IN EAST AFRICA

- Providing investment incentives. This promotes investment by private entrepreneurs because incentives like subsidies reduce the costs of production. As investment expands, more jobs are created for the people hence   reducing unemployment.

- Implementing education reforms with emphasis on practical skills to the school leavers.

The government is setting up vocational institutions or polytechnics to train people in practical skills (hands-on skills) like carpentry, building, metal work, agri-business, tailoring. This enables people to start up projects for self-employment and for employment of others.

- Undertaking further privatization. Ownership of public (government enterprises) is being transferred to private investors to create efficiency. This efficiency enables firms to expand their scale of production and they generate more jobs to the people in the long-run.

- Population control measures are being implemented. Controlling population growth rate is being carried out so that the rate at which the population is rising is proportionate to the rate at which jobs are being created.

- Improving the political climate/ atmosphere. The political climate is being improved so that more investors are attracted to the country. This promotes investment by private entrepreneurs and in the process more jobs are created in the country hence reducing unemployment.

- Promoting small scale industries. Such industries create linkages in the economy and involve many activities which help to create more jobs for the people.

- Modernising agriculture, this involves changing agriculture from subsistence production to commercialized high yielding agriculture..

- Advertising existing jobs. Employers are being encouraged to advertise job opportunities in the newspapers, magazines and other media like radio stations to create awareness to the job seekers. Some of them are taken up for employment and this reduces unemployment.

- Diversifying the economy. Many economic activities like agriculture, industry, tourism, information technology, etc are being encouraged and supported by the government.

- Setting up and improving basic infrastructure. By improving basic infrastructure like roads, producers are enabled to transport their goods to markets. This encourages further investment and production

- Widening markets through joining economic integration. Uganda is a member in regional economic groupings like COMESA and East African Common Market. This increases industrial and other investments to produce goods and services for the regional market.

- Encouraging the use of appropriate technology. Firms are being encouraged to apply methods of production which are mid-way between capital intensive and labour intensive.This helps to keep a reasonable number of workers in active employment instead of laying them

- Providing affordable credit/ start-up capital. Microfinance institutions are being encouraged to extend affordable credit to the people to start up income generating projects. Such projects are providing jobs to the people thereby reducing unemployment.

- Carrying out further trade liberalization. Trade liberalization is increasing the number (range) of trade or economic activities carried out in Uganda. The expansion in economic activities provides more jobs to the people and consequently unemployment is reduced.

- Reforming the land tenure system. Reforms in the Land Act are being implemented by government to allow more people access land. This creates employment for people in the agricultural sector.

- Supporting the disadvantaged groups of people/ providing programs for persons with disability. Such projects include shoe making, tailoring, making crafts, etc. the disabled people become employed and earn income from these projects.

- Exporting surplus to other countries, People who have failed to get jobs in Uganda are being encouraged to seek employment in other countries through employment agencies.

EFFECTS / CONSEQUENCES OF UNEMPLOMENT IN EAST AFRICA

- It is associated with increased dependence burden/ high dependence burden.
  The unemployed people have to survive on the few employed people for basic needs like food, clothing, etc. This lowers the savings of the employed people which limits investment.

- It results into low output.
  This is because the unemployed have a low purchasing power and therefore firms reduce their output levels making an economy to grow at a very slow pace.

- It leads to low government revenue.
  This is because the unemployed people do not pay direct taxes to the government. As a result, government finds it hard to acquire the much needed revenue to finance development objectives.

- Worsens income disparities.
  This is because the unemployed do not earn income while the employed people earn income, save and invest and therefore accumulate more wealth.

- It leads to low aggregate demand for goods and services/ small market size.

This is because the unemployed people have a low purchasing power.

- Leads to brain drain.

  After failing to get jobs in the home country, highly trained professional people move to other countries in search for jobs. This has a danger of reducing the manpower available in the home country and the development process is retarded.

- Leads to immorality/ crime.

  The unemployed people who are not earning income resort to all sorts of immoral acts like theft so as to earn a living.

- It leads to high government expenditure.

  The government spends heavily on supporting projects which are aimed at creating jobs for the unemployed people. This exerts pressure on the national budget.

- Underutilization of productive resources hence waste.

  Seasonal unemployment in the agricultural sector causes excess capacity and as a result, there is wastage of resources that could have been put to use.

- It causes misery and low levels of living due to low or no incomes.

  Individuals who are jobless find it difficult to buy or access basic necessities of life. As a result, their standard of living drastically falls or declines hence causing misery and suffering.

- Creates political unrests/ political tension.

  The unemployed people are easily mobilised to stage a rebellion against the ruling government. This has disastrous consequences such as loss of lives and property.

- Discourages investment in education

  The unemployed are not able to meet the costs of paying their children's school fees. Also when the educated people fail to get jobs, other people get discouraged and they may not study or invest in education. This worsens illiteracy levels.

- Increases rural urban migration and its negative consequences.

  The unemployed people move from rural areas to urban areas in search for jobs and after failing to get them, they resort to committing crimes like theft.

- Decline in the level of acquired skills.

  The unemployed people do not practice their skills they acquired during training in schools, colleges and universities. This leads to decay of knowledge and loss of skills hence hindering professional/ career development.

- It results into family instabilities.

  The unemployed people are unable to meet the needs of their families since they are not earning income. This leads to loss of happiness hence leading to quarrels, separation, divorce and having children go to streets.

THE EXTERN DEBT BURDEN

The debt burden in East Africa has been rising in recent years, and it can be attributed to a range of factors that vary from country to country. However, several key causes are commonly seen across the region:

CAUSES OF EXTERNAL DEBT BURDEN IN EAST AFRICA

Increased Borrowing. Many East African countries, such as Kenya, Uganda, and Tanzania, have increased their borrowing from both domestic and international sources to finance infrastructure projects, social programs, and budget deficits.

The need to develop and construct more infrastructures. Many East African countries have embarked on ambitious infrastructure projects, including roads, railways, ports, and energy generation facilities. While these projects are essential for long-term growth, they often require significant capital, which is typically borrowed. For instance, Uganda's development of the Standard Gauge Railway (SGR) involved significant Chinese loans, contributing to rising debt levels.

 Increased over-reliance on Foreign Debts. Many East African countries have increasingly turned to international lenders (including China, the World Bank, and commercial markets) to finance development, often taking loans in foreign currencies.

Weak Domestic Revenue Collections. In many East African countries, tax revenues remain low due to inefficiencies in tax collection systems, widespread informality in the economy, and sometimes political resistance to taxation reforms.

An increased levels of Corruption and Mismanagement in East Africa. In East Africa**,** Loans taken for development projects sometimes end up being misallocated or diverted, leading to fewer tangible results and increasing the need for further borrowing to finance deficits.

 price fluctuations in commodity prices (oil, coffee, tea, etc.), slowdowns in key trading partners' economies, or global inflation, can worsen the debt situation for East African countries.

Out break of pandemics. The COVID-19 pandemic, for example, put pressure on many countries in the region, leading to a decline in exports, a reduction in remittances, and an increase in the demand for social spending, all of which have contributed to rising debt levels.

Over ddependence on External Markets. East African economies are often highly dependent on external capital flows. When international investors pull back, or when external financing conditions tighten, the ability to service foreign debt diminishes.

High Interest Rates on External Loans. Many East African countries have taken loans from international markets at relatively high-interest rates, particularly from non-concessional lenders like commercial banks.

Increased Political Instability in East Africa. Political instability, ethnic conflicts, and insecurity in some East African countries have undermined economic growth and led to higher borrowing needs. Conflicts often divert resources away from development priorities and result in the need for humanitarian assistance, reconstruction, and emergency spending, all of which contribute to rising debt

Some countries in East Africa have found it difficult to manage or restructure their existing debt, leading to a growing debt stock..

Out break of natural disasters. East Africa is highly vulnerable to the impacts of climate change, such as droughts, floods, and desertification, which have a direct impact on agriculture — the backbone of many East African economies. These climate-related shocks can increase government spending on emergency responses, while at the same time reduce the ability to generate revenue from key sectors like agriculture.

.Lack of Diversification in Economies. Many East African economies are highly dependent on a limited number of sectors (agriculture, extractive industries, and tourism), which makes them vulnerable to external shocks. This lack of diversification hampers the growth of other revenue-generating sectors, limiting the government's ability to generate sufficient funds internally and leading to increased borrowing.

IMPACTS OF THE EXTERNAL DEBT BURDEN ON EAST AFRICA (to be discussed in class)

CHAPTER 6

CIVIL SOCIETY AND NON- GOVERNMENT ORGANIZATIONS IN EAST AFRICA

KEY WORDS

Non-profitable

Voluntary

Executive hand

Donor advocacy

Citizen

Dependency

1. Do you have any NGOS in your community?
2. What do they do in your communities?
3. List down some of these organization
4. Give reasons why these NGO where formed?

CIVIL SOCIETY ORGANISATIONS (CSOs)

Civil society organizations (CSOs) are non-state actors whose aims are neither to generate profits nor to seek governing power.

CSOs unite people to advance shared goals and interests.

CSOs offer social and welfare services to supplement on government services.

Organizations and institutions that make up civil society include,

➤ Labor unions
➤ Non-profit organizations
➤ Community-Based Organization
➤ FIDA Uganda
➤ HURINET
➤ Churches, and other service agencies that provide an important service to society but generally ask for very little in return or no returns at all.

NGOs
Non-governmental organizations (NGOs) are generally defined as nonprofit entities independent of governmental influence (although they may receive government funding).

Some large international NGOs include,
➤ Amnesty International
➤ The International Federation of Red Cross and Red Crescent Societies
➤ Oxfam International
➤ CARE
➤ Save the Children
➤ World Wildlife Fund

➢ World Vision

Benefits of registering as an NGO

- Avail tax exemption. ...
- Right to acquire assets. ...
- No minimum share capital requirement. ...
- Protection from personal liability. ...
- Transfer of ownership. ...
- Exemption on stamp duty. ...
- Structured financial plan. ...
- Stability of entity.

The essential characteristics of CSOs/NGOs

- Freedom of choice. Civil society is based on an individual's freedom of choice. ...
- Freedom from profit making.
- Freedom from administrative regulations.
- Laypersons and professionals join forces.
- Action at a local and grassroot level.
- Chance to make a difference.

Difference between NGOs and CSOs

The primary distinction between NGOs and CSOs is **the total number of members**. Non-governmental organizations carry out their work on a larger scale, which is why they have a large number of members. However, because CSOs operate on such small scales and levels, they only have 20 to 30 members.

Similarities between NGOs and CSOs

➢ Both preserve human rights.
➢ Both contribute to society's safety and progress.
➢ They both advocate for individuals' human rights, protection, and safety.
➢ Both pledge for change in the established order of society.
➢ They both occupy civil space in society.
➢ Both provide immediate relief and longer-term transformative change – by defending collective interests and increasing accountability
➢ Both provide solidarity mechanisms and promote participation
➢ Both influencing decision making
➢ Directly engaging in service delivery and challenging

ORIGIN OF CIVIL SOCIETY AND NON-GOVERNMENT ORGANIZATION IN EAST AFRICA

The post-independence period saw an increase in the number of NGOs in east Africa.

In Uganda, NGOs became common in 1980 following the political turmoil, mismanagement of the entire government institutions, and insufficient leadership capacity alongside globalization

As result, the period from 1980-1990 is known as the NGO decade. During this time, the NGO sector steadily grew both in number and activities.

There activities were especially in reconstruction and offering of social and welfare service.

From fairly modest number prior to 1986, the sector has grown dramatically and it's estimated that there are currently over 5000 active NGO in Uganda.

Consequently, the East African Civil Society Organizations Forum (EACSOF) was founded in 2007 as an autonomous umbrella body of NGOs and CSOs in east African.

ROLE OF NGOs AND CSOS IN OUR SOCIETIES/ COUNTRY

- ❖ They preserve human rights for example education rights, election rights etc.
- ❖ NGOs and CSOs contribute to society's safety and progress by providing improved security.
- ❖ They also advocate for individuals' human rights, protection, and safety.
- ❖ They also establish order of society.
- ❖ They also provide immediate relief and longer-term transformative change by defending collective interests and increasing accountability
- ❖ They provide solidarity mechanisms and promote participation of all citizens in societies.
- ❖ They also influence decision making at both local and international level
- ❖ They also involve directly or indirectly engage in service delivery
- ❖ They also contributes to the development of innovative solutions to poverty reduction.
- ❖ In some areas, NGOs and CSOs help to develop culture and art through promoting and financing cultural activities.
- ❖ They also protect the environment and support all activities and concerns that make a vibrant civil society.
- ❖ NGOs motivate citizens in all aspects of society to act, rather than depend on state power and beneficence.
- ❖ Leave space for more points

PROBLEMS/CHALLENGES FACED BY NGOs AND CSOs

1. Lack of Funds · have to wait / depend on donations which cause delay in their projects.

2. No Strategic Planning · this may largely be caused by lack of experienced employees who are familiar with the operations of the organization.

3. Absence of networking · NGOs working together to reach their goals more efficiently is one perspective. However, some NGOs also see it as a form of competition. Which affect their work.

4. Lack of maintenance. NGOs In many developing countries, the lack of infrastructure is quite common and NGOs believe that people deserve a better standard of living. Thus, many NGOs have decided to address this issue by building communities beneficial to a lot of individuals. Initially, results are evident and people live a better life. But it should be kept in mind that not all communities have the capacity to maintain the same lifestyle they were expected to have

5. Opposition from government.

6. Poor communication and transport network

7. Natural calamities like

8. Lack of effective governance. Many NGOs do not understand why they need to have a governing board and how to setup one.

9. Lack technical and organizational capacity to implement and fulfil their mission.

Study questions

1. Identify the clubs in our school
2. Compare their activates to those of the NGOS or CSO
3. Research about FIDA Uganda and find out there role in our society
4. Research about World Vision and find out there role in Uganda
5. Assume that you work with any of the above NGOs, how can you solve a conflict rising out of gender conflict that the government has ignored

TOPIC 07 THE CHANGING LAND TENURE SYSTEM IN EAST AFRICA.

Key words

- Land
- Land tenure
- Land ownership
- Freehold
- Leasehold
- Mailo land

By the end of the chapter learners should be able to;

a. Know the various types of land ownership in Uganda.
b. Understand how land was traditionally owned in Uganda, Kenya and Tanzania.
c. Know the main land reforms carried out Uganda since independence.

d. Understand the development of land ownership in Uganda.
e. Understand the value of land as a cornerstone to development in Uganda.

Definition of some key terms

Land

Land is a solid area of the ground that is used for a particular purpose such as farming. It's the part of the earth that consists of the ground rather than sea or air.

The term land also refers to the surface of the earth that is not covered by water including the continents, islands and any other and masses.

It's a fundamental component of our planet's geography and provides space for various forms of ecosystems, human settlements, agriculture, forests, minerals, climate and more.

Land tenure

Land tenure refers to the legal regime or way in which land is owned by an individual or groups of people or communities.

It can also be referred to as the method through which land can be acquired, owned and utilized.

It encompasses the legal rights, responsibilities and arrangements that govern the use and control of land.

Land tenure systems vary from one region or country to another and can include the various forms such as private ownership, communal ownership, government ownership, or leasehold

These systems play a crucial role in determining land use, property rights and access to resources and they can have significant social, economic and environmental implications.

In simple terms, land tenure systems determine who can use what resources for how long and under what conditions and circumstances.

LAND TENURE SYSTEMS IN UGANDA

In order to understand land ownership in Uganda, we consider the agreement of 1900 in Buganda where the British streamlined the system of land ownership in Buganda which later affected Uganda at large.

In this agreement, the British appropriated land for different purposes from which comes todays land tenure systems or forms of land ownership.

Articles 15-18 of the 1900 Buganda agreement provided terms and conditions to govern the ownership and administration of land.

The land tenure system was divide into three categories that is;

- Crown land
- Kabaka's land (official mailo land)
- Land to the chiefs (private mailo land)

Currently, we have **four modes of land ownership or tenure in Uganda** namely;

- Customary land tenure
- Freehold land tenure
- Mailo land tenure
- Leasehold land tenure

Customary land tenure system

This is a traditional way of governing or owning land and use that is rooted in / on the customs, norms, practices and traditions of a specific community or indigenous group of people.

In this system, land is communally or collectively owned by elders, clan heads or a group of people in a given area.

It's mostly common in many parts of the world especially within the rural areas of the still developing countries.

Its more common in the Northern, Eastern and some parts of Uganda.

The land act of 1998 states that customary land tenure shall be governed by rules generally accepted as binding by that particular community and anyone who acquires land in that community shall also be bound by the same rules.

Under this type of tenure, obtaining a private certificate of title is possible for individuals if they first agree with the community that owns the land (the clan or tribal chiefs) then the sub county and government land boards take up the process of issuing the title.

Characteristics of customary land tenure system in Uganda.

- Customary land tenure system is typically community based meaning that land is owned collectively by a particular community, clan, or tribe. The community as a whole has control over land allocation and use.
- It is governed by the customary laws ie the customary systems often rely on the oral tradition to pass down the land rights and rules from one generation to another which is always done by the elders of the community.
- Land is allocated basing on the traditional practices and cultural norms for example grazing, farming etc
- Land demarcations are done through known landmarks like ridges, swamps, trees/forests, rivers among others.
- The owners of this land do not have title deeds to the land that they own but may own certificate of customary ownership.

- It is or was basically found in north, south and western Uganda. Over 60% of land in Uganda is customarily held.
- Utilization of this land is controlled by the elders, clan chiefs.

The Mailo land tenure system.

This is a specific land tenure system that was historically established by the British colonial rule. It's named after the land tenure agreement that was introduced by the 1900 Buganda agreement, which was an agreement between the British colonial government and the kingdom of Buganda.

In other words, this is where land is registered and owned in eternity with the owner having a land title for it.

It is guided by provision of the 1998 land act, the basic unit of the mailo system is a square mile hence the name "mailo" which is also equivalent to 640 acres.

This type of tenure is predominantly in Buganda with some in minimal parts of Ankole, Bunyoro and Toro sub regions.

Characteristics of mailo land tenure system

- It is basically confined to the central part of Uganda due to the historical reasons.
- The system confers freehold granted by the colonial government in exchange for political cooperation under the 1900 Buganda agreement.
- It recognizes occupancy by tenants known as **bibanja** holders and the owner has absolute ownership over the land.

Freehold land tenure system

This is a form of land ownership that grants individuals or entities the most comprehensive and perpetual rights over a piece of land.

In this system owners of land have a deed/title to their land which allows them to hold the registered land forever.

In this type, land ownership is perpetual or has no end. This resulted from the agreements between the British colonialists and the kingdoms of Uganda.

This system was set up by agreements between kingdoms of Buganda, Bunyoro, Toro and Ankole plus the British colonial government.

Characteristics of the freehold land tenure system.

- The owners of land possess a land title which gives them full ownership of land.
- The landowner often referred to as freeholder has absolute ownership rights over the land ie has the right to use, sell or lease without limitations.
- Freehold land can be passed down through generations indefinitely
- It can be freely sold, bought, or transferred to other individuals or entities/ subjects under legal and regulatory requirements.
- Only citizens of Uganda are entitled to own land under the freehold land tenure system.

Leasehold land tenure system

This is a system of landownership in which individuals or entities known as leases hold the right to use a piece of land for a specified period.

In this system, one party grants exclusive rights and possesses the land for a given period usually in exchange for payment or rent.

In Uganda, one can get a lease from an individual, local authority or government for a period usually of 49 or 99 years with agreed terms and conditions.

This is the most common land tenure system in urban centers.

Characteristics of leasehold land tenure system

- In this system, the lease doesn't have ownership rights over the land but holds a leasehold interest for a predetermined period which may vary for example 49 or 99 years or even more.
- Much of the land leased is or was previously owned by the government bodies like the land commission, district land boards etc.
- The conditions for leasing land are normally accompanied by development conditions imposed on the use of land to whom it is leased.
- Depending on the lease conditions, leases may have options of renewal or extension upon expiry. Renewal often involves renegotiating lease terms including rent payments.
- Leasehold rights can sometimes be transferred to another party with the consent of the landowner or authority.
- Leaseholds rights can be terminated if the lessees fail to meet their obligations under the lease agreement or if the lease agreement expires without renewal. Land may then revert to the landowner or authority.

Note:

There was also *the crown land tenure system*. This was the land that belonged to the British protectorate government in Uganda or the monarch of England. It was 91,000 square miles which consisted of lakes, rivers, forests among others which were left untouched and vested in the crown of England, hence term crown land. ***However, this land tenure system is no longer into existence.***

How land was traditionally owned in Uganda, Kenya and Tanzania

It is not possible to identify a single traditional tenure system for the whole of East Africa. This is because the practices of customary tenure differed from one ethnic group to another. In some communities, there was recognition of various individual rights to possess and use land, subject to authorization by the family, clan, or community.

In parts of northern Uganda and Kenya for example, land was communally owned by the communities of the Iteso, Karamojongs, Masai among others and this was for the purposes of grazing their cattle, firewood collection and sources of water among others.

Swampy areas, forests were too for the communities for fishing, cutting papyrus, collecting wild fruits, honey and for hunting wild game.

The rights to access such land were inherited and therefore such lands were not subjected to commercial transactions and exchange.

There was also the customary family land where the head of the family or clan would own the land. The use of such land would be controlled by the elders, family head, clan head or a group of people within the family or clan whose other responsibility was to ensure that the land was well protected.

Traditionally, individuals also owned land. This was referred to as individual customary land ownership. Under this arrangement, the individual was said to own land because it had been allocated to them to or owned permanently. Such individuals would have the rights to use land or even to allocate it to the next generation.

In kingship societies, land was owned by the kings on behalf of their subjects. The kings would, through their chiefs allocate land to those subjects as may be deemed necessary. The land would also be used to win the loyalty of the subjects.

However in some societies like Buganda following the 1900 Buganda agreement, statutory instruments were put in place to regulate land ownership in the kingdom. As a result, land was divided into the crown and mailo land. Crown land was given to the protectorate government and mailo land was given to the Kabaka, his family and chiefs.

Figure below shows traditional ownership of land in East Africa
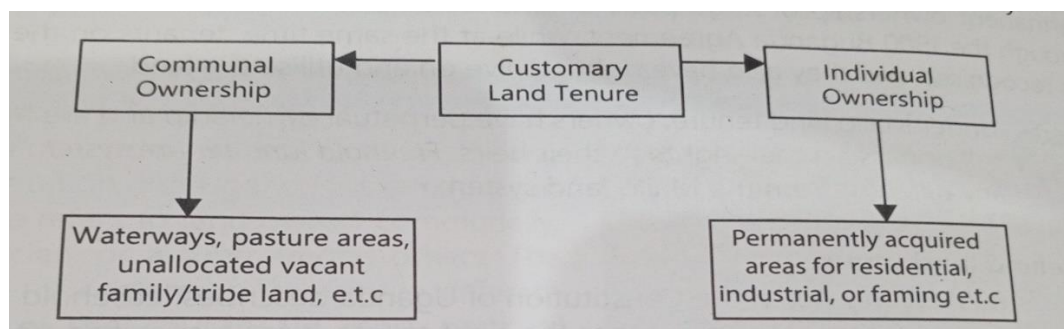
THE KEY OR MAJOR LAND REFORMS IN UGANDA SINCE INDEPENDENCE

Upon independence, the 1962 constitution of Uganda and the public land act of the same year retained the land systems that were established by the colonial government.

They maintained the mailo, freehold, leasehold and customary tenure systems with confirmation of certain rights and provisions on restrictions.

The land system at independence also recognized the rights of occupants and settlers and protected them against eviction by the landlords without due process.

The 1962 land Act: this came into effect in the same year that Uganda gained her independence. It extended the rights of those holding land under customary tenure.

Under this act, land lawfully occupied by customary tenants could no longer be transferred to the ownership of another person without the consent of its occupants.

The land reform decree of 1975: after Idi Amin overthrowing Obote Milton in a coup, he established a military government.

This government passed land reform decree of 1975 which declared all land in Uganda to be publically owned and centrally vested with the Uganda land commission.

The Uganda land commission was granted sole power to manage and allocate land on behalf of the state.

All previous forms of freehold were abolished and converted into leaseholds. The land reform decree of 1975 was intended to give the government of Uganda greater control over the use and management of land.

The 1995 constitution land reform and the 1998 Land Act: perhaps, the most outstanding land reforms in Uganda were brought about by the 1995 constitution and the 1998 land act.

The 1995 constitution states that land in Uganda, belongs to the citizens of Uganda in four land tenure systems; the customary, freehold, mailo and leasehold.

The 1998 Land Act was put in place to implement the land reforms in the 1995 constitution.

The land amendment act of 2010: this was to enhance the security of occupancy of lawful and longtime occupants on registered land, in accordance with article 237 of the constitution and for related matters.

It granted lawful occupants statutory protection against any random evictions.

THE HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT OF LAND OWNERSHIP IN UGANDA.

The evolution of landownership in Uganda has rotated around the changes in political and administrative regimes that have controlled governance in the country.

The changes in the law can, therefore be traced to **the precolonial, colonial, post-independence**, Idi Amin and the constitution of 1995 eras.

In **the precolonial era**, land was available for communal use, held for grazing purposes and small scale subsistence agriculture.

In this era, no single individual owned land. The land tenure and management was customary.

In **the colonial era,** when Uganda became a British protectorate at the end of the 19th century, the land tenure and management system was changed due to the colonial government agreements with Buganda, Ankole and Toro.

It gave way to increased individualized ownership of land, instead of communal ownership. This resulted into creating a gap between the rich and poor.

In **the post-colonial era**, there were land reforms such as the land reform decree passed during the regime of President Idi Amin Dada in 1975, the land reforms in the constitution of 1995 and the 1998 land act.

Note. The majority of Ugandans are ignorant about the laws and land reforms. People have continued to occupy land they do not own, without the consent of the land lords, and they are usually later evicted. This has led to many conflicts over land in Uganda today.

The landlords are also ignorant of their rights and likewise the tenants do not understand their rights over land.

Value of land in the development of Uganda/importance

- Land is one of the most essential pillars of human existence and economic development. It is the most valuable asset for the citizens of a state or nation.
- Land is the primary source of livelihood for the majority of Ugandans. It is crucial for agricultural activities that provide food, income and employment for a significant portion of the population.
- In rural areas, many people engage in meaningful subsistence farming and their access to land directly impacts their ability to support their families and communities.
- Land is essential for housing and shelter. It provides a place for families to build homes and communities to establish settlements especially for the growing the populations.
- It is also a valuable asset for economic development. It serves as a basis for industrial and commercial activities including factories, businesses and infrastructural development. These investments also lead to economic growth and job creation.
- Land is deeply intertwined with cultural and social identity in Uganda. Many ethnic groups have traditional land systems and cultural practices associated with the land tenure and use.
- Many Ugandans view land as a secure asset that can appreciate value over time. Owning land is a means of accumulating wealth and financial security.
- The government generates revenue through land related taxes, fees, and transactions which contribute to public finances and fund infrastructure and public service.
- Land is also used for wild life conservation and this is done through the establishment of game parks, game reserves, and zoos among others.

- It is also used for mining due to the various mineral resources found inland for example……….
- It can also be used to setup tourist attractions like game parks, game reserves etc.
- Etc.

Land fragmentation

This refers to the division of a single piece of land into smaller and often irregularly shaped parcels or plots owned by multiple individuals or entities.

This process normally occurs over time and can result into numerous small land holdings within what was originally larger.

Causes of land fragmentation

- Population growth which results into land shortage. In order to accommodate more families or households, land is often divided into smaller plots hence land fragmentation.
- The law of property inheritance has also been responsible for land fragmentation. There are many unwritten laws in different families in Uganda which automatically permit people to sell of their land (especially boys) which is in most cases inherited from their parents.
- Urbanization and infrastructure development. Rapid urbanization and infrastructure development projects lead to displacement of rural communities and fragment their land, as land is acquired for roads, housing and other purposes.
- The different land tenure system in Uganda also result into land fragmentation. Traditional systems of land ownership for example customary gives a right to the family members to split land into smaller units for each family member which results into land fragmentation.
- The price of land in some parts of Uganda for example central Uganda is another factor responsible for land fragmentation.
- Historical land and poor government land policies.
- The persistent land conflicts amongst the people in different parts of the country.

Qtn. a. Discuss the causes and effects of land evictions in Uganda today

   b. what can government of Uganda do to stop such land evictions in our country.

Causes of land evictions

- Failure to pay ground rent on the occupied land
- Failure to acquire proper land documents such as title
- Possession of forged land titles
- Failure to pay back loans or mortgages
- Using land for wrong motives e.g. growing marijuana
- The need to undertake government development projects
- Discovery of mineral resources
- Presence of fraudulent land dealers

- Encroaching wetlands, industrial parks and water bodies
- Weak government laws concerning land ownership
- Etc.

Effects of land evictions

- Destruction of people's property
- Leads to displacement of people
- Loss of family ties
- Increases suffering of the displaced people
- Loss of cultural values
- Results into homelessness
- Increases immoral acts like prostitution, drug abuse and alcoholism
- Increase the rate of slum development in different areas
- Promotes infrastructural development
- Helps to conserve the environment
- People learn to respect other people's land
- Leads to refugee crisis
- Leads to rural urban migration
- Etc.

Sample activity of integration.

Land is often bought or sold with extra precaution due to the legal issues that surround it. With the increased scramble for land in our communities, one is safer having sufficient knowledge about the legal process of registering, transferring and owning land titles. Despite this caution, land conflicts and wrangles have remained massive in Uganda.

Task.

a). what are the causes of land conflicts in Uganda?

b). How have the land conflicts affected the development of land in Uganda?

c). **How can these land conflicts be addressed? (get answers to be discussed in class)**

d). Why do you think the value of land is ever increasing in Uganda.

Chapter assessment.

1. Explain the different types of land tenure systems in Uganda.
2. How was land owned in any one societies of East Africa in the pre-colonial period?
3. How do the different land policies affect the different land uses in Uganda?
4. How has land contributed to the development of East Africa?v

CHAPTER 08. KEY PERSONALITIES IN THE HISTORY OF EAST AFRICA BEFORE INDEPENDENCE.

Learning outcomes

By the end of this chapter, learners should be able to;

a) Know the background and the East African problems caused by the colonialists.
b) Understand the key personalities who struggled for the independence of East Africa.
c) Appreciate the impact of the East African Personalities in the struggle for independence.

THE KEY PERSONALITIES WHO STRUGGLED FOR THE INDEPENDENCE OF EAST AFRICA.

The key personalities in the struggle for independence of Tanzania.

CHIEF MKWAWA OF THE HEHE (1890-1898)

Career and Contributions/Achievements/Role of chief mkwawa.

- Mkwawa was the leader of the Hehe who occupy Southern Tanzania. He came to power in 1878 succeeding his father Munyigumba.
- He built a highly trained army, which he used to stage a tough and prolonged resistance against German rule in Tanganyika.
- From 1800, he was busy extending the frontiers of his empire. This however, landed him in problems with the Germans who were also busy colonizing Tanganyika.
- In his bid to control trade, he closed the trade route between Tabora and Bagamoyo and also terrorized and imprisoned German, African and Swahili traders at Usagara, for refusing to pay tribute (hongo) to him.
- He defied German pleas to release the traders he had imprisoned. This arrogance angered the Germans and forced them to react.
- It should be noted that Mkwawa's contemptuous behaviour was based on the support he expected to get from Chief Chabruma of the Ngoni and Chief Siki of Tabora.
- In 1891, the German force under Zelewekis confronted him for the first time. However he learnt of this plot. He ambushed and humiliated this force at Lungala, killing many of the German forces including its commander, Zelewekis.

- The Germans temporarily accepted defeat and gave up on him and shifted their attention to Chief Isike of the Nyarnwezi who was willing to work with them.
- Mkwawa however realized the need for a peaceful end to the conflict and dispatched messengers with gifts to the Germans. The Germans responded by gunning the messengers down.
- This act greatly annoyed Mkwawa, forcing him to close the Caravan trade route from Bagamayo to Tabora to all traders. The Germans again started organizing expeditions against him.
- But Mkwawa was not yet to give up his peaceful plans to end his problems with the Germans. He therefore sent another messenger with gifts but he was also killed.
- This greatly demoralized him, forcing him to go into a full-scale war with them and at Kilosa, where
- he managed to kill 290 Gerrnans and their allies.
- In October 1892, he destroyed a Long distance caravan at Kondowa. This greatly increased his influence and he was able to complete the construction of his fort at Kalenga.
- In 1894, the Germans decided to deal decisively with him. They stormed and destroyed his capital at Kalenga, killing many of his soldiers.
- With a handful of his men, he escaped to Ingonge where he unsuccessfully attempted to ambush the Germans on their way back to the coast.
- The Germans after this relaxed their machinery against him, thinking that this had completely weakened
- him, but they were mistaken.
- Mkwawa this time using a guerilla war tactics launched another round of attacks on the German - controlled areas.
- The Germans then came to finally destroy him. Using the scorched - earth policy, they destroyed water and food reservoirs, which caused wide spread hunger and starvation.
- In his four-year-guerilla war, Mkwawa suffered heavy losses as his warriors were killed and others surrendered to the Germans.
- After being cornered, he refused to be captured alive and instead shot himself in 1898. A few of his trusted soldiers also gave in to the Germans.
- When the Germans found his dead body, they cut off his head and sent it to a museum in Berlin -
- Germany.
- The Hehe constantly demanded for the head of their fallen chief until when the Germans bowed to pressure and returned it in 1954.
- This marked the end of his resistance to the Germans but still he is a hero who tried to protect the
- independence of his people.

DR. JULIUS KAMBARAGE NYERERE OF TANZANIA

Career and contributions/achievements/role of Julius K Nyerere.

- Dr. Nyerere commonly known as Mwalimu (teacher) was born at Butiama near the Eastern shores of L. Victoria in March 1922 to Burito Nyerere-a Zenaki chief.
- Despite his chiefly background, Nyerere lived generally a rural life helping his family in daily chores.
- He went to Musoma for his primary, Tabora School for secondary and later (1943) Makerere University College (Kampala, Uganda) for: a diploma in education.
- While at Makerere, he formed the Makerere Boys of Tanganyika, an association of all Tanzanians studying at Makerere.

- On completion of his studies at Makerere in 1945, Nyerere returned to Tanganyika to start a teaching career at St. Mary's Tabora - a Catholic mission school.
- He later (1949) went for further studies at the University of Edinburg in Scotland where he attained a Masters degree in History, Economics and Philosophy.
- While in Britain, he met various Pan - Africanists like Kwame Nkrumah and Jomo Kenyatta who inculcated into him a feeling to liberate his people.
- In 1952, he returned to Tanganyika and was immediately elected Secretary of the Tanganyika African Peoples' Welfare Association. He also became an active member of the Tanganyika African Association (TAA).
- In 1953, he was elected President of the Tanganyika African Association (TAA). He reorganized the party and made it an effective organ in national politics.
- In May 1954, he was appointed a temporary member of the Legco.
- On 7th July the same year (1954), at Dar es Salaam, a new party (TANU) was formed, replacing TAA. Nyerere was elected president of this new party.
- The party was broad in outlook, Nyerere its leader made it clear that, TANU was opposed to tribalism and aimed at uniting all Tanganyikans for independence.
- Nyerere's non - racial tendencies soon endeared him to the new governor, Sir Richard Turnbull. The two became good friends and always sat together to discuss government problems.
- In the same year (1954), he presented the African case for self - rule to the United Nations visiting mission.

- The following year (1955), he visited UN trusteeship committee, demanding independence for Tanganyika.
- Still in 1955, he was elected to the Legislative council but resigned after two years accusing it of having no serious programme as far as speeding up the independence of Tanganyika was concerned. He decided to pursue independent moves.
- In 1956, Nyerere again went to the UN trusteeship committee demanding for African independence once again.
- However, in 1957, his meetings became violent and were banned by the colonial government
- The same (1957), he again visited the United Nations to demand for 50% of unofficial seats in the Legislative council for the Africans.
- In December 1957, he was elected to be the President of the Legco in order to diffuse the conflicts that had risen between TANU and the government, but after a few months he resigned due to failure of the Legco to pursue serious independence moves.
- In September 1958, he steered TANU to sweeping victory in the all-race Legco elections. TANU supporters won in all the areas.
- UTP because of its poor performance in the elections was disbanded unconditionally. TANU's victory meant another step in the independence struggle.
- In his campaigns and even racial politics, a through out his rule, Dr. Julius Nyerere always encouraged unity, non spirit of freedom and hard work "Uhuru na Kazi".
- In 1959, he became Chairman of the five-elected member organization.
- In the August 1960 elections, he steered his TANU party to another landslide victory where it won 70 of the 71 seats reserved for Africans in the LEGCO.
- On 1st May 1961, Tanganyika got internal self - rule and Dr. Julius Nyerere became the first Prime minister.
- On 9th December 1962, Tanganyika got total independence from the British, which the Duke of Edinburg "handed" to Nyerere at Dar es Salaam Stadium. He therefore became the first President of Tanzania.
- This great son of Tanzania and Africa retired from government in 1985 and died of leukemia on 14th October 1999 at St Thomas Hospital in London. He left behind a wife Maria, five sons and three daughters.

The key personalities in the struggle for independence of Uganda.

SEMEI KAKUNGULU

Career and Contiributions/Achievements/Role of Semei Kakungulu.

- Semei Lwakilenzi Kakungulu was born in Kooki around 1870 but grew up as apage a at the Kabaka's court in Buganda.

- As a young boy, he joined the Buganda's royal army where he demonstrated that he was a military genius. This earned him the title of a general.
- With the growing influence of the missionaries at the Kabaka's court, Kakungulu found himself close to the clerical circles of the CMS missionaries who converted him to Christianity and christened him-Semei.
- During the 1888-1890 religious wars, he joined hands with the Christians to topple Kalema and the Muslims who had taken control of Mengo - Buganda's capital. This landed him the post of Sub - county chief of Kyaggwe (Bugerere),
- He confined himself there for some time, encouraging cotton growing, tax payment and building of roads, all of which were in line with indirect rule.
- Later, he rivalled with Apollo Kaggwa for the post of Katikiro - Chief Minister of Buganda, which he lost to the latter.
- His political career however begun to take shape in 1890, when he decided to become an ally of the British for personal gains - he hoped to build his own empire.
- In the same year (1990), he was placed in Bunyoro. He proved a competent soldier and administrator that he even became a threat to other Ganda personalities in Buganda.
- He convinced fellow Baganda that the best way to fight Bunyoro was to ally with the British, and he was willing to do anything to please them (British).
- In 1893, with the help of Col. Colville, Kakungulu launched his campaign against Bunyoro and Kabalega in particular, who had become a problem to the British.
- In the same year, he teamed up with a British official, Mac Donald to defeat Ganda Muslims These retreated to Toro, where they were equally defeated.
- In 1895 he led a delegation of Kuman and Iteso elders to Buganda seeking the Kabaka's protection,
- In 1897 he collaborated with the British to quell Sudanese mutiny and this earned him a medal
- In 1899, he headed the campaigns that resulted in the capture of Kabalega and Mwanga at Kangai in Lango on 9 June. He achieved this with the help of a British force under Col Evatts. The two were exiled to the Seychelles Islands in the Indian Ocean.
- Between 1899 and 1920, he moved to Lango, Bugisu, Teso and Kumam, supposedly to create an empire for himself in Eastern Uganda
- In 1901 he established a fort at Buruli for his operations against the Kumam, Iteso, Bugisu and Bukedi
- Kakungulu used both diplomacy and military power (the gun) to weaken and disorganize the societies he came across.
- He was nicknamed "Kabaka of Bukedi?" by Sir Harry Johnson in recognition of his efforts to bring Bugweri and Bugisu under British rule.

- Fearing the fame he had built for himself, the British in 1901 attacked his headquarters in Budaka (Bukedi) and forced him to withdraw to Nabumali (Mbale), which was also taken over in 1903.
- By 1906 he had taken over Busoga and was appointed "President of the Busoga Lukiiko" in 1908 by the British who wanted to please him.
- He also created the office of "Kyabazinga" (paramount chief of the Basoga) and crowned himself the first Kyabazinga of Busoga.
- In all the areas Kakungulu conquered, he carried out a number of economic developments that made him the darling of the British. But there were cries from the locals that his chiefs were grabbing their land, cattle and sheep.
- He built administrative posts like in Budaka and Nabumali (Mbale), which were later used by the British as bases.
- He built roads almost in the whole of Eastern Uganda. In Bugisu, he built the Bubulo - Nabumali road and in Busoga, the Iganga - Budaka road. These eased mobility of administrators and fostered economic development.
- He also helped to attract Indian and Arab traders to open up trading activities in Eastern Uganda
- He encouraged the growing of cash crops. In Busoga, he for example encouraged cotton growing and coffee growing in Bugisu.
- He is also credited with the planting of many Mvule trees and mangoes and these lined the main roads in Eastern Uganda.
- In all the areas Kakungulu conquered, he introduced the Kiganda model of administration (he divided the area into counties (Saza), sub-counties (Gombolola), parishes (Muluka) etc. This helped in the development of indirect rule and native administration.
- In Busoga for example, he divided the area into seven counties and introduced Baganda agents and advisers there.
- In his administration, Kakungulu did not neglect the health sector. He helped set up medical centres wherever he established administrative posts like Budaka dispensary in Budaka. These improved on the health of the people.
- He encouraged the British to extend the railway line to Eastern Uganda to collect cotton and coffee and by 1930, the line had reached Tororo. In all this, Kakungulu succeeded basically because of the loyalry of his followers i.e. Baganda agents and collaborators
- All the above reforms earned Kakungulu a lot of admiration from the British, but he was not to remain in the same bed with them for long. A clear testimony that they had been using him as a stooge.
- After sometime, he suffered a series of demotions and transfers. For example, in 1901 he was demoted from being the Kabaka of Bukedi to the President of the Busoga Lukiiko, on accusations of bringing chaos and disorder to the region.

- He was further demoted to a county chief in Mbale and his new headquarters taken over by the British. He withdrew back to Bukedi in 1913 where he spent most of his later years.
- In 1923, having lost popularity, the British retired him on a pension of £3,000.
- These developments greatly demoralized and frustrated Kakungulu, forcing him to join a religious sect called "Abamalaki", which opposed missionary teaching, white civilization and medicine.
- In 1929, Kakungulu died a disappointed old man, which was typical of most collaborators. He had not realized his dream of creating an empire for himself. He was buried in Mbale.
- Nevertheless, by the time of his death, he had done a great job as far as extending British rule in Uganda was concerned.

OMUKAMA KABALEGA OF BUNYORO

Career and Contributions/Achievements/Role of Kabaleega

- Kabalega was born in 1850 to Omukama Kamurasi and his wife Kanyange Myamutwalibwa in present Toro.
- He spent his early years in Bulega where his father had been exiled by a rebellion. From Bulega, he acquired the name Kabalega (meaning some one from Bulega).
- In 1869, he was involved in a power struggle with his brother Kabigumire over who should succeed their father Kabigumire was supported by the royal family and provincial chiefs.
- In 1870, he came to power after defeating his brother (Kabigumire) with the support of the commoners, his father's bodyguards, the Arabs and Langi mercenaries.
- His problems however, did not end with the defeat of his brother and therefore his early years in power were full of problems.
- These ranged from internal rivalry, Buganda's threat, the Nubians backed by Khedive Ismail, the Arab slave traders, the lost glory of the kingdom, to increased European interest in East Africa. All his early efforts were therefore aimed at solving these problems.
- After the defeat of his brother, he exiled and killed members of the royal family and the chiefs who had supported him (his rival brother).
- He began his campaigns to rebuild Bunyoro by building a strong army - Abarusuuru. This army had two regiments each with 1800 men, armed with guns he had got from the Khartoumers and the coastal Arabs.
- He developed a network of spies (informers). These always fed him with information about his enemies within and outside the kingdom.
- He destroyed the social classes that existed in the and appointed even Bunyoro to positions of responsibility, hence uniting the Nyoro society. commoners (Abairu)

- He carried out expeditions against his neighbours (Toro, Baganda, Lango, Acholi, Teso) aimed at reviving the glory of his kingdom that had greatly declined during the reign of his father
- Kabalega's imperialism soon clashed with British imperialism. The British were in other words alarmed by his political activities.
- He first resisted British intrusion in June 1872, when he fought Sir Samuel Bdber and his Egyp allies at the boarder of Masindi (the battle of Isansa). Baker who had been hired by Khedive Istrmailto extend his Egyptian territory southwards was utterly defeated to the disnay of the British
- The success in the above battle motivated him to attack Buganda in the East, which made him face Captain Fredrick Lugard and his Ganda allies.
- At the same time Kabalega realized that his campaigns against the British would cause him problems and so he opted for peace. In this, he wanted Samuel Baker to give him military support against Buganda.
- But Samuel Baker told him that he could only give him support on condition that he accepted Egyptian protection which he refused and therefore refused to sign any protection treaty with the British Samuel Baker).
- Later in 1893, he attacked Kasagama, drove him out of his capital and forced him to seek refuge in Buddu, where he met Capt. Lugard on his way to Ankole.
- Kasagama moved back to Toro with Lugard who fought and defeated Kabalega's forces and restored him (Kasagama) back to power.
- A chain of forts was built on the Bunyoro-Toro border to protect the latter against the formers attacks. Later Kabalega attacked these forts and deposed Kasagama again.
- In 1894, Lugard led a force of Europeans, 600 Sudanese and 1500 Baganda that attacked and defeated Kabalega. Kabalega abandoned his capital at Mparo and withdrew to Budongo forest.
- The British forces under Colonel Colville, the new British commissioner occupied Bunyoro and installed his son-Kitahimbwa as new the king.
- In Budongo forest, Kabalega continued with his wars of resistance against the British but this time avoiding confrontational warfare (He resorted to guerrilla war tactics).
- In 1895, he successfully defeated the British and Ganda forces in Masindi. When Semei Kakungulu defeated him in Budongo forest, he fled to Lango.
- In Lango, he was joined by Mwanga who was also running away from British imperialism in Buganda The two continued with their guerrilla warfare against British rule.
- However, in Lango, the two were betrayed by the local chiefs who reported them to Sernei Kakungulu With Col. Evatts force, Kakungulu captured the two men on 9th April 1899 in a swamp near Lake Kyoga and brought them to Kampala, where he handed then officially deported to the Seychelles Islands in the Indian Ocean. to the British. They were

- Even in exile, the Banyoro still looked at him as their king and hero and continued pressing for his return. He converted to Christianity and was baptized Yonand
- Later, he was allowed to return as a mere citizen but he did not reach Bunyoro. He died at Mpumudde in Jinja on 7th April 1923, aged 3. He was buried at Mparo in present day Hoima district.
- Despite his weakness, Omukama Cwa II Kabalega Yohana was a great military ruler and an outstanding African hero who staged a serious resistance to the British occupation of his area.

IGNATIUS KANGAVE MUSAAZI (UNC)

Career and Contributions/Achievements/Role of I K Musaazi.

- Musaazi was born in 1902, to a Gombolola chief in Bulemeezi.
- He had his education mainly in mission schools up to St. Augustine's School-Canterbury England
- He became a teacher and taught at Kings' College Buddo. He rose to become an Inspector of schools from 1935 to 1936.
- He founded the Peasant Farmers' Voluntary Organization and later became the President of the Federation of African Farmers.
- On 2nd March 1952, he founded the Uganda National Congress (UNC) from the Federation of African Farmers Association, which had been outlawed for organizing riots in Buganda. The UNC became the first major political party in Uganda.
- At the helm of UNC, Musaazi enabled the party to become a wider political organisation, cutting across tribal, regional and religious divides. This enabled the party to get support from all corners of Uganda
- The party spearheaded the campaign for self - rule in Uganda. It was the first political party to be formed with a national outlook.
- It attacked European rule and exploitation, demanded greater representation on the Legco and opposed the federation of East Africa.
- It organized demonstrations and strikes throughout Uganda that were intended to bring self -rule as soon as possible. The colonial government was forced to think about the independence of Uganda as something serious.
- It organized the boycott of non - African shops and condemned the deportation of the Kabaka to England.
- In 1959 UNC was split into two wings. One was opposed to Buganda's separatist demands and led by Obote and another by Jolly Joe Kiwanuka. By this time, Musaazi had been exiled to London.

- The Uganda National Congress was however predominantly Protestant and full of Old Boys of King's College Buddo.
- Initially, UNC was opposed by the Baganda for its views of having a united Uganda and only managed to win back their hearts when it strongly condemned the deportation of the Kabaka.
- Musaazi who is regarded as the father of Uganda's nationalism is buried at the Heroes' corner at Kololo.

DR. APOLLO MILTON OBOTE
Career and Contributions/Achievements/Role of Dr. Apollo M. Obote.

- He was born on 28th December 1924 at Akokoro village in Lango, northern Uganda.
- He was born to a local village chief called Stanley Opeta.
- He started his education at Lira Protestant School and then to Gulu High School and Busoga College, Mwiri.
- He then joined Makerere University College in 1948 for an Arts degree which he never completed.
- In 1949, Obote led a students' strike in his second year at the university and he was expelled for political activism.
- After his expulsion, Obote was also denied a Visa by the Colonial government to study abroad.
- He later joined a British Engineering and Construction firm called Mowlem construction Company based in Jinja.
- When the company transferred to Kabeta in Kenya, he followed it but left it for Standard Vacuum Oil Company.
- While in Kenya, he was inspired by members of Mau Mau like Jomo Kenyatta, General China (Waruhiu Itote) and Dedan Kimathi. He had studied with some of them at Makerere.
- He stayed in Kenya until 1957 and when he returned to Uganda he was appointed chairman of the Uganda National Congress (UNC) Lango branch.
- In 1958, he was elected to the Legco representing Lango and he came one of the vocal members on the council.
- At the same time, he befriended Ignatius Kangave Musaazi the leader of UNC and Musaazi appointed Obote as UNC representative in Mbale.
- Later, Obote sacked Musaazi for travelling to London without the consent of the party.
- As a result, UNC lost its popularity and Musaazi was exiled in Gulu and later London.
- Obote then befriended William K Nadiope, a member of the Legco who had formed the Uganda Peoples' Union (UPU).
- Nadiope always moved with and introduced Obote as a son of Busoga to the masses but this was a mistake because it weakened UPU.
- In 1959, there was a split in UNC and Obote led the anti-Buganda wing.
- In 1960, he was awarded a honorary degree of Law of Long Island University in U.S.A.
- On 9th March 1960, UPU merged with Obote's UNC wing to form the Uganda Peoples' Congress (UPC).

- Obote assumed leadership of the new party with John Kakonge as Secretary General.
- The party became more popular as more prominent people joined it e.g. Jaberi Bidandi Ssali, Ali Kirunda Kivejinja and Dani Wadada Nabudere.
- In the 1961 elections, Obote's UPC lost to Ben Kiwanuka's Democratic Party (DP).
- Kiwanuka became the leader of the Legco and Obote became leader of the opposition.
- In the Legco, Obote strongly demanded for an advance towards self rule.
- On 1st March 1961, Uganda became self governing.
- in the same year, Obote was among those who attended the London conference where he greatly supported Buganda's federal demands.
- He was so tactical that he even decided to marry a Muganda lady called Miria Kalule which made him a darling of the Baganda.
- In April 1962, elections were organized and UPC got 37, DP got 24 and Kabaka Yekka (KY) got 21 votes.
- Obote decided to ally with KY to form a government and this was a victory for Obote.
- On 9th October 1962, Uganda got her independence with Obote as the Prime Minister.
- On 10th October 2005, Obote died in a Johannesburg hospital.

The key personalities in the struggle for independence of Kenya.

TOM MBOYA
Career and Contributions/Achievements/Role of Tom Mboya.
- Mboya was born around 1931 in Rusinga valley, Western Kenya. He had a three-year secondary education course after which he trained as a Health Inspector.
- After school, he worked as a Health Inspector in Nairobi. During his work, he was greatly touched by the living conditions and welfare of the Africans.
- He blamed the government for inaction and indifference to the conditions of the Africans.
- In 1953, he was elected Sectary General of the Kenya Federation of Labour. When political activities were banned due to the confusion created by the Mau - Mau activities, the federation remained the only forum for those who wanted to air out t their grievances and discontent against the colonial government
- During his tenure of office, he established contacts with overseas Labour organisations like in the United States and Britain. This greatly enhanced his credibility.
- In 1957, he established the Peoples' Convention Party (PCP) to contest the elections to the Legislative council
- In 1958, he was elected to the Legislative council with three other African members, due to the reforms introduced in 1957 by the new Colonial Secretary, Lennox - Boyd. He became one of the vocal members on council.
- He strongly opposed Lennox - Boyd's constitutional changes whereby the twelve specially elected members had to be chosen by the Legco. He thus led other African mernbers into a boycott, demanded a full constitutional conference and the release of Kenyatta.

- In 1960, Tom Mboya was one of the African representatives who participated in the Lancaster House conference in London. This conference gave the African majority on the unofficial side of the Legislative council.
- In March 1960, Mboya with other African members to the Legco (Oginga Odinga, James Gichuru) formed the Kenya African National Union (KANU). He was elected Secretary General of this new party.
- He participated in the elections of 1961 through which KANU got a resounding victory (KANU 83
- seats, KADU 41 seats). However, it refused to form a government until Kenyatta was released.
- With other African nationalists, Tom Mboya organized and arranged for the independence of Kenya which was finally attained on 12th Dec 1963.

MZEE JOMO KENYATTA
Career and Contributions/Achievements/Role of Jomo Kenyatta.
- He was born in 1893 at Nsenda near Nairobi.
- His first name was Kamau, but between 1909 and 1914, he attended a Presbyterian Mission School where he was baptized Johnston Kamau Wa'Ngenyi.
- Between 1922 to 1928, Kenyatta worked as a water inspector for Nairobi municipality.
- During this period, he was an active member of a Kikuyu political organisation and he became the voice of the workers demanding for better wages and housing facilities.
- In 1928, he was elected Secretary General of the Kikuyu Central Association whose main aim was to recover land lost to white settlers.
- He also became the editor of the Kikuyu Language Journal called ''Muigi Thania'' (Unity).
- In 1929, he went to London as a representative of the Kikuyu Central Association and pleaded for the African loss of land to the colonial secretary. He returned to Kenya in 1930.
- In 1931, he left for England and studied anthropology at the London School of Economics.
- In 1945, he organized the Manchester Pan African Congress with Kwame Nkrumah, George Padmore and others.
- In July 1946, he returned to Kenya and he replaced James Gichuru as the leader of Kenya African Union (KAU), a party that demanded for more African representation on the Legco.
- He became an active member of Mau Mau and with General China, Dedan Kimathi and Tom Mboya as the leaders of the movement.
- During the same time, he also served as a principal of Githunguri Teacher Training College but his stay was short lived.
- He was sacked by the colonial government due to his growing popularity.
- Many KAU members were not impressed by Kenyatta's decision to support Mau Mau activities.
- In 1951, the party between split between the moderates and extremists who didn't believe in the activities of Mau Mau.
- Kenyatta stayed with the moderates because of the high respect he had earned himself and also stayed in contact with Mau Mau fighters.

- In the same year, Kenyatta presented a memorandum to the Colonial Secretary Griffith, containing African demand for self rule.
- In 1953, he was arrested on suspicion that he was the real power behind the Mau Mau guerilla activities.
- He was sentenced to seven years in prison with other leaders e.g. General China and Dedan Kimathi.
- In 1960, KANU was formed by African leaders in the Legco and they elected Kenyatta as president while still in prison.
- In 1961, he was released from prison and he assumed leadership of KANU.
- He was accused by some party members of being too town centered, radical and making KANU a tribal grouping of only Kikuyu and Luo.
- This led to the formation of a new party called KADU (Kenya African Democratic Union).
- Kenyatta tried to reconcile KADU and KANU but his attempts failed.
- In January 1962, he was elected to the Legco and during general elections, KANU won with an over whelming majority.
- In February 1962, Kenyatta attended the second Lancaster House Conference that was called to draw up a constitution for Kenya.
- In May 1963, elections were held and KANU won with eighty two seats and its rival KADU got forty one seats.
- On 1st June 1963, Kenya attained self rule and Kenyatta became prime minister.
- He chose all his ministers from all races and always stressed African unity.
- On 12th December 1963, Kenya achieved total independence at Uhuru stadium.
- Prince Philip handed over the reigns of power to Jomo Kenyatta who therefore became the first President of Kenya.
- In 1978, Kenyatta died.
- He was popularly known as ''Mzee'' a Swahili word for old man.